

FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR

AND

EXERCISES,

ON

OLLENDORFF'S METHOD.

BY

WILLIAM HENRY PINNOCK,

CORPUS CHRISTI COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

—

LONDON:

WHITTAKER AND CO. AVE MARIA LANE.

—
1844.

TO THE REV. THE
MASTER, AND FELLOWS,
&c. &c. &c.
OF CORPUS CHRISTI COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,
THIS SERIES OF WORKS
Is inscribed,
AS A VERY HUMBLE, BUT A SINCERE TRIBUTE OF
RESPECT AND ESTEEM,
BY THEIR OBLIGED AND FAITHFUL SERVANT,
WILLIAM HENRY PINNOCK.

P R E F A C E.

IT is admitted beyond all question, and every-day experience bears testimony to the fact, that the classic languages of Greece and Rome have become a most essential—the chief ingredient in the education of a gentleman. Not that he will make use of these tongues in the intercourse of his after-life; but because the mere learning of these languages has been found to be the best discipline for bringing out the various faculties of the youthful mind,—the simplest and surest method of awakening and maturing those intellectual powers which give rank and character to the future man. Beyond this, the acquaintance that he derives with those master-works of mind and action, so admirably and so strikingly pourtrayed in Grecian and Roman literature, cannot fail to stamp upon his mind such images of the noble and the grand, as will exercise a high and exalted influence over the inward feelings of the heart, and the outward bearing of his

growing years. Every attempt, therefore, to facilitate the acquirement of either of these languages, cannot but in some degree be welcome; but how far satisfactory, experience and an indulgent public, can alone determine.—Now to the work before us.

This development of the structure of the Latin language has long been put in practice by the Author among his own pupils with considerable advantage. Etymological analysis,—continued repetition and explanation, with questions of *examination* and *inquiry*, so critical and diversified as to establish a sound knowledge of the language as it now exists in classic authors, and *arranged in close contiguity* with the parts they analyse, a point of great importance for practical application,—are some of its most important features. This *questioning* is carried out in all our public schools and universities, and the best modern editions of classic authors are not considered complete for the purposes of education without the appendage of examinatory questions;—how much more necessary, therefore, must it be in our introductory works on these important subjects! And further: the mathematical development here pursued has been applied most satisfactorily and successfully to the German and French languages by Mr. OLLENDORFF, whose celebrity in this department has obtained for him the flattering appellation of the “*Euclid*” in German.

In respect to the Latin tongue, every classic must be aware of the uncertain and inaccurate data left to

us from antiquity of its early structure. A mixture of Oscan, Umbrian, and Etruscan elements growing into a language by the accretion of the various dialects of the surrounding people, as they became amalgamated with the Roman empire, produced the rough material which the fascinating elegance of Grecian literature in the Augustan age moulded into something like a finished tongue. Though our knowledge of its actual growth and progress is imperfect, yet comparative philology, aided by the deep research of German scholars, has done much in explaining away many of the difficulties that encumbered its development; but till all the omissions and deficiencies have been accurately supplied,—till the abbreviations and the assimilation of literal elements have been lucidly explained, the etymological structure of the language cannot be thoroughly understood. In fact, the Latin language is a system of *abbreviation* from beginning to end; the whole process of mutilation by aphæresis and syncope, by apocope and crasis, by antithesis and metathesis, has been at work unchecked to destroy the analogy of its structural development. There is not a part of speech,—there is not a declension, not a conjugation, that is free from this reproach. The letter *r* is continually usurping the place of *s*¹; as *arbor* for *arbos*, *Valerius* for *Valesius*, *Papirius* for

¹ In multis verbis, in quo antiqui dicebant *s*, postea dictum *r*.—*Varro de Ling. Lat.* vii. 2G.

Papisius²; as well for *d*: as in *auris*, from *aud-io*; *l* also for *d*: as *sella*, from *sedeo*; *b* for *p*: as *bitumen* for *pitumen*, from *pituita*; and a host of others familiar to every scholar, without touching upon the derivations from the Greek, such as *fera*, from *θηρ*; *ambo*, from *αμφω*; *hortus*, from *χορτος*; *equus*, from *ἵππος*; &c.

Again, by ellipsis at the beginning, middle, or end, we find *nec* for *neque*, *imus* for *infimus*, *otium* for *opitium*, *summus* for *supremus*, *hodie* for *hoc-die*, *malo* and *magolo* for *magis-volo*, *nolo* for *non-volo*, *videlicet* for *videre-licet*, and so on; not omitting even proper names, which we learn from Varro constantly in colloquialism suffered syncopation: as *Artemas* for *Artemidorus*³. The great evil, however, arose from the practice of *writing* these abbreviations, so destructive of all analogy, rather than give to each word its full complement of letters; *etymology* gave way to a careless and negligent pronunciation,—sense yielded to sound. Augustus himself cared not for his orthography; he wrote just as he spoke.

On the subject of *declension*, where can we find uniformity? We will take one case for an example of existing deficiencies.—The ancient genitives uniformly ended

² Cicero forcibly shows this practice in his *ad Famil.* ix. 21.

³ These practices occur in our own language in familiar conversation to a very great extent: as 'tis for it is, *I'll* for I will, *won't* for will not, *don't* for do not, *ha'-penny* for half-penny, *Chomley* for Cholmondeley, *Cohoun* for Colquhoun; and in provincialisms particularly: *Da'entry* for Daventry, *Charvil* for Chalk-field, &c.

in *s*; in the first declension we find *familias* for *familiae* (pater-*familias*), *auras* for *aurae* (*Virg.*), *terras* for *terrae* (Nevius ap. Prise. 6); in the second declension, *solus*, *uter*, and other adjectives make *-ius*: as *solius*, *utrius* (*sola* for the fem. occurs in Corn. Nepos); in the third declension all make *is*, in the fourth declension *is* is the contraction of *-uis*: as *graduis*, *gradus*; in the fifth declension many of its nouns have been transferred to the third declension, which makes *is*: as (from *fames*) *famei* is found for *famis*, *plebi* and *plebei* for *plebis* (*tribunus plebei*, *Livy*): the pronouns too were formerly in *s*: as *ego*, gen. *mis* (now *mei*), *tu*, gen. *tis* (now *tui*); *ille* makes *ill-ius*, *is* makes *cius* (*cjus*), and *quis*, *qui* (cuius. *c* for *q*, *j* for *i*).—Lastly, on *conjugation*. The third person singular uniformly ends in *t*, but the other persons are perfectly anomalous; take the *first person singular* for an illustration. The generality of these end in *m*: the present indicative in *m* still exists, in *sum* and *inquam*, the rest have lost the *m*; the first future indicative we have found all in *bo* (*Scheller*); we find in Terence, Eun. iv. 7, 35, *scibis* of the fourth conjugation for *scies*, and the futures in *ro* and the perfect in *i* are still without the *m*. To reconcile all these anomalous cases is a task of great difficulty,—is impossible; and those only who have attempted it can appreciate the labour of explaining them. This may in some measure account for the greater partiality exhibited in our universities for the *Greek*,

which is free from much of the incongruity encumbering the threshold of Latin learning. But we must conclude; and in expressing our acknowledgments to the many German and English scholars who have attempted some exposition of the great difficulties of philology generally, and which have been of such material assistance in the following development of the Latin language, we cannot pass without especial mention of the "*Novo Cratylus*" of Mr. Donaldson, which we strongly recommend to the perusal of every classic who has a taste for the intrinsic beauties of those learned tongues.

Corpus Christi College,
Cambridge.

CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE
1. <i>Case and Declension of Nouns</i>	1
2. <i>Conjugations of Verbs (3rd persons)</i>	5
3. <i>First Declension of Nouns</i>	10
<i>First Conjugation of Verbs (words in opposition).</i>	
4. <i>Second Declension of Nouns</i>	14
<i>Second Conjugation of Verbs.</i>	
<i>(Agreement of Adjectives). (Place of the Genitives).</i>	
5. <i>Third Declension of Nouns</i>	19
<i>Third Conjugation of Verbs (Adjectives).</i>	
6. <i>Fourth Declension of Nouns</i>	24
<i>Fourth Conjugation of Verbs (Infinitive mood as a Substantive).</i>	
7. <i>Fifth Declension of Nouns</i>	27
<i>Comparison of Adjectives (than after comparatives).</i>	
8. <i>The Five Declensions (Recapitulation)</i>	33
9. <i>Declension of Adjectives (Recapitulation)</i>	36
<i>Tenses of Verbs.</i>	
10. <i>Pronouns</i>	40
<i>Indicative Mood (Adjectives followed by a Genitive).</i>	
11. <i>First and Second Persons of Verbs</i>	45
12. <i>Imperative Mood</i>	49
<i>Pronoun <i>Hic</i> (Nouns of Time and Place).</i>	
13. <i>Subjunctive and Potential Moods</i>	53
<i>Pronoun <i>Qui</i>. (To express a purpose.)—(Sequence of Tenses).</i>	
14. <i>The Verb <i>essc</i>, to be</i>	57
<i>Indefinite Pronouns.</i>	
15. <i>Subjunctive of <i>esse</i></i>	60
<i>Irregular Comparatives (Est with a Genitive).</i>	

LESSON	PAGE
16. The Verb <i>esse</i>	63
(<i>First and Second Persons, and Imperative</i>)—(<i>Est with a Neuter Pronoun</i>).	
17. Infinitive Mood	66
<i>Price in the Genitive or Ablative.</i>	
18. Supines	70
19. Participles. (<i>Perfect or Past in -tus, and Future in -rus</i>)— (to express a purpose three ways)	73
20. Participles (<i>Present and Future in -dus</i>)—(<i>Ablative Absolute</i>). 76	
21. Participle in -dus (in Agreement)—(<i>Duty and Necessity</i>)....	80
22. Duty or Necessity	83
23. Gerunds (declined as a Noun)	85
24. Passive Verbs.....	88
<i>Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses. (Agent, Manner, and Instrument in the Ablative).</i>	
25. Passive Verbs (continued).....	93
<i>Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses (First and Second Persons).</i>	
26. Passive Verbs (continued).....	97
<i>Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses.</i>	
27. Passive Verbs (continued)—(<i>Imperative and Infinitive Moods</i>). 101	
28. Deponent Verbs (their government)	105
29. Irregular Verbs (<i>Possim</i>)—(<i>Est and a dative</i>)	107
30. Irregular Verbs (continued)—(<i>Volo, Nolo, Malo</i>)	110
31. Irregular Verbs (continued)—(<i>Fero and Feror</i>).....	114
<i>A Consequence, Purpose, Negatives.</i>	
32. Irregular Verbs (continued)—(<i>Edo, Fio, Eo</i>)	119
33. Impersonal Verbs (their government).....	123
34. Impersonal Verbs (continued)—(their government).....	127
35. Prepositions (with <i>Accusative</i>)	129
36. Prepositions (with <i>Accusative</i>)—(continued)	131
37. Prepositions (with <i>Ablative</i>)	132
38. Prepositions (with <i>Ablative</i>)—(continued)	133
39. Prepositions (with <i>Accusative and Ablative</i>)	134
40. Adverbs and Conjunctions (<i>quin, nonne, num</i>)	135
<i>Questions Recapitulatory</i>	137

FIRST
LATIN GRAMMAR
AND
EXERCISES.

LESSON 1.

CASE AND DECLENTION OF NOUNS.

1. THERE are in all languages *three* persons :
The person who *speaks*, which is called the *first* person ;
The person *spoken to*, which is called the *second* person ;
The person or thing *spoken of*, which is called the *third* person.
2. All nouns are of the *third* person ; and they have verbs to agree with them always in the *same* person.
3. In the use of nouns and verbs in *English*, we place before them certain words ; as
*A*¹ man ; *the* man ; *of a* man ; *of the* man ; &c.
I love ; *I* did love ; *I* have loved ; *I* shall love ; &c.

¹ *A* and *the* are called *articles* in English. There are no articles in Latin.

4. The Romans did not place such words *before* their nouns and verbs, but changed the *endings* of them; as

A man, homo; of a man, hominis; to a man, homini; &c.

I love, amo; I did love, amābam; I have loved, amāti; &c.

5. This change in nouns is called **DECLINATION**:
The change in verbs is called **CONJUGATION**.

6. The *part* of a word *not* changed is called the *root*, or *base* of the word.

7. Nouns in Latin, bear in mind.

Five different ways are found declined:

And add to all their roots or bases.

Six endings, which are called their CASES².

8. The *five declensions* are distinguished by the ending of the *genitive case*.

9. Here are the *endings* of the several *genitives* of the five declensions:—

The 1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
ends in *o* *i* *s* *us* *ei*.

10. The genitive case in *English* is known by the sign *of*, before the noun, or by the *apostrophic s* ['s] following the noun; as

GENITIVE. GENITIVE.
Eng. The crown *of the king*; or, *the king's crown*.
Lat. *Corona regis*; or *regis corona*.

11. The leading, or first case of a noun is the **NOMINATIVE**; and it expresses simply the *name* of the person or thing, which is *spoken of*; as

	NOM.	NOM.	GENITIVE.
Eng.	<i>Cicero</i> ,	<i>the father of (his)³</i>	<i>country</i> .
Lat.	<i>Cicero</i> .	<i>pater</i>	<i>patriæ</i> .

² The six cases are, the Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

³ Words in parentheses throughout this work are not expressed in Latin.

12. But when the person or thing is *spoken to*, this same form of the noun is called the **VOCATIVE** case.

VOCATIVE. VOCATIVE. GENITIVE.

Eng. O Cicero, father of (thy) country.
Lat. O Cicero, *pater* patriæ.

13. (a) The genitive case always stands *before* the noun which governs it, like the English idiom in "*the king's crown*." Lat. *Regis corona*.

(b) But when the governing noun is *emphatic*, or a *monosyllable*, the emphatic noun or monosyllable stands first; as

Eng. Cicero, *the father* of (his) country.
Lat. Cicero, *pater* patriæ.

In which sentence *pater* is the more emphatic, and therefore stands before the genitive *patriæ*.

Eng. The law of nature.
Lat. *Lex⁴ naturæ*.

QUESTIONS.

1. In languages, how many *persons* are there? Which is the *first* person? which, the *second*? which, the *third* person?
- 2. Of what person are all nouns? What have they to agree with them in the *same* person?—3. What words do we in English place before nouns? [*A*, or *the*; *of a*; *of the*; *to a*; *to the*; *in*, *with*, *from*, or *by a* or *the*.] Which words do we place before verbs? [The pronouns *I*, *thou* or *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we*, *they*, which are never expressed in Latin except for the sake of emphasis; and the signs of the tenses *do*, *am*, *did*, *was*, *have*, *shall*, *will*, &c.]—4. What did the Romans instead of placing such words before their nouns and verbs? (Changed the endings.)—5. What is this change in *nouns* called? What, in verbs?—6. What is the part of the word remaining unchanged called? (The *root* of that word.)—7. Repeat the lines noting the number of *declensions* and *cases*.—8. How are the *five* declensions distinguished?—9. Name the genitive endings

⁴ *Lex* the *monosyllable* precedes *naturæ*.

of all the declensions.—10. By what *sign* is the genitive case known in English? (By *of*, or by the *apostrophic s.*) Give in Latin "*the king's crown.*"—11. Which is the first case of a noun? (Nominative.) What does it express?—12. When a person or thing is *spoken to*, what is the same form called? (The vocative case.)—13. Where should the genitive case always stand? [(a) Before its governing noun; (b) but when the governing noun is *emphatic*, or a *monosyllable*, the governing noun stands *first*.]

EXERCISE 1.

14. (Learn these words, and write down their *genitives* and *declensions*. Observe, the *endings* are separated from the *roots* by a hyphen; thus: *Musa*, G. *mus-æ*, a song.)

Musa, G. <i>mus-æ</i> , a song.	Terra, G. <i>terr-æ</i> , the earth.
Magister, G. <i>magistr-i</i> , a master.	Cælum, G. <i>cæl-i</i> , heaven.
Dominus, G. <i>domin-i</i> , a lord.	Corona, G. <i>coron-æ</i> , a crown.
Regnum, G. <i>regn-i</i> , a kingdom.	Rex, G. <i>règ-is</i> , a king.
Nubes, G. <i>nub-is</i> , a cloud.	Domus, G. <i>dom-is</i> , a house.
Lapis, G. <i>lapid-is</i> , a stone.	Amicus, G. <i>amic-i</i> , a friend.
Opus, G. <i>opér-is</i> , a work.	Deus, G. <i>De-i</i> , God.
Parens, G. <i>parent-is</i> , a parent.	Virtus, G. <i>virtut-is</i> , virtue, merit.
Manus, G. <i>man-ūs</i> , a hand.	Vir, G. <i>vir-i</i> , man.
Facies, G. <i>faci-ēt</i> , a face.	Lex, G. <i>lèg-is</i> , law.

Example. { GEN. NOM.
 Societatis vinculum.
 Of society the bond.

15. Amici facies. Dei manus. Vir virtutis (13, b).
 Viri opus. Lex parentis (13, b). Lapidis opus. Magistrorum corona. Domini regnum. Regis musa. Cœli nubes. Parentis domus. O rex (12). O vir. O magister.

[Place the genitive *before* the governing noun, and omit the English *article*, and the sign *of*; and words in brackets.]

The Lord of the earth. The work of (his) parent. The master's song. A cloud of heaven. The king's crown. A friend's house. The kingdom of God. The law of nature (13, b). O parent. O earth. O heaven. O nature.

LESSON 2.

CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

What is the change in nouns called? (5.)—What is it called in verbs? (5.)—What is the root of a word? (6.)—How many persons are there? (1.)

All nouns are of the *third* person, and they have verbs to agree with them always in the *same* person. (2.)—We must therefore proceed to the formation of verbs, in order to begin writing sentences.

16. There are in verbs *four* alterations,
In grammar term'd their *conjugations*,
And known by the vowel preceding *re*;
As *āre*, *ēre*, *ēre*, *īre*⁵.

⁵ Looking at the etymological structure of Latin verbs, the conjugations comprise *three* contracted forms, and *one* uncontracted or *simple* form. The *long* vowels preceding *-re* in the infinitive mark the contracted verbs, and the *short* vowel is the *simple* verb; thus,

INFINITIVE.

1. <i>Amo</i> (for <i>amāo</i>),	contracts	<i>ama-ēre</i>	into	<i>am-āre</i> .
2. <i>Moneo</i> ,	contracts	<i>mone-ēre</i>	into	<i>mon-ēre</i> .
3. <i>Audio</i> ,	contracts	<i>audi-ēre</i>	into	<i>aud-ēre</i> .
“ 3. <i>Rego</i> ,	simple,	<i>reg-ēre</i> .		

The 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations may therefore be termed *pure* verbs, having a vowel before the final *o*; and

The 3rd conjugation comprises the *impure* verbs, which have a *consonant* before the *o*, with some few exceptions (*arguo*, *facio*, &c.). Whence the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations have great *similarity* in their formation; while the 3rd stands alone in its irregularities. All the terminations of the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations are *alike*, and can be proved so by etymology and analogy: the only *apparent* exceptions are the *perfect* and its derivations of the 2nd conj. in *-ui*, and the *future* in *-am* of the 4th conj.; but the *-ui* of the 2nd conj. is from the *same* root as the *-ri* of the 1st and 4th conj.; they are merely the compressed and absorbed form of *sui* (ſ equalling or comprising the sound of *r*); thus,

1. *Ama-sui* = *ama-v(u)i*. II. *Mone-sui* = *mon(e)fui*.
IV. *Audi-sui* = *audi-v(u)i*.

In regard to the *future* in *-am* of the 4th conj., it originally was in *ib*; *av*, *scibo* (for *sciam*), *servibo* (for *serviam*).—*Zumpt*. These conjugations are therefore *alike* in their etymological structure.

17. (a) The vowel of the *first* conjugation is *ā* long—āre; as, *am-āre*, to love.
 (b) The vowel of the *second* conjugation is *ē* long—ēre; as, *mon-ēre*, to advise.
 (c) The vowel of the *third* conjugation is *ë* short—ēre; as, *reg-ēre*, to rule.
 (d) The vowel of the *fourth* conjugation is *ī* long—īre; as, *aud-īre*, to hear.

18. The endings then of the *four* conjugations are,
 I. conj. II. conj. III. conj. IV. conj.
 -ārē. -ērē. -ērē. -īrē.

19. These endings mark the *infinitive mood*⁶ of a verb, and give the simple meaning of the verb without reference to *person*, *time*, or *number*.

20. This is usually expressed in English by the sign *to*, before the verb, or the participial ending in *ing*; as,

Eng. <i>to love, or loving</i> ;	<i>to advise, advising</i> ;	<i>to rule, ruling</i> .
Lat. am-āre	mon-ēre	reg-ēre.
<i>to hear, hearing.</i>		
aud-īre.		

Example. { Lat. *Jucundum est amare*.
 { Eng. Pleasant is *to-love or loving*.
 English { *To love* is pleasant; or,
 construction { *Loving* is pleasant.

21. There are *three* persons;

The *first* is the person who *speaks*.
 The *second* is the person *spoken to*.
 The *third* is the person *spoken of*.

22. VERBS have *three* different forms or *endings* in each number, to agree with these *three persons*.

23. As *all nouns* are of the *third* person, we will begin with forming the *third* persons of verbs, leaving

⁶ *Infinitive* means not *finite* or confined by any *person*, *time*, or *number*. *Mood*, from *modus*, means *way*, *mode*, or *manner*.

the *first* and *second* persons till we come to speak of *pronouns*.

24. *All verbs* have their *third* persons throughout ending in *t*: in the plural these *third* persons have *n* before the *t* (*nf*).

25. Whenever a verb is seen ending in *t*, it must be of the *third* person: if a vowel (*a, e, or i*) precedes the *t*, it is *singular*⁷; if *n* precedes the *t*, it is *plural*.

26. N.B.—This refers only to verbs *actives*; that is, when the *nominative* preceding the verb *performs* the action expressed by the verb. (By-and-by we shall speak of *passive verbs*.)

27. Verbs express *actions*, and these actions can be expressed as *completed*, or as *not-completed*.

28. Each class of actions can refer to *three* different periods of *time* :—namely, *present*, *past*, and *future*.

29. We will begin with *actions not-completed*, and *present* or *now doing*. A verb expressing this state of the action is in the **PRESENT TENSE**⁸.

30. Verbs are made of the *third person* singular, *present tense*, by changing the ending *-re* of the infinitive into *t*: thus,

	I. conj.	II. conj.	III. conj.	IV. conj.
31.	ā long.	ē long.	ō short.	ī long.
<i>Infinitive endings.</i>	ūre.	ēre.	ōre.	īre.
	I.	II.	III. & IV.	
32.				
<i>Present tense.</i>	ūt.	ēt.	ōt.	īt.

33. Observe, the *pure verbs* *-ūre*, *-ēre*, *-ōre*, make the change *alike*, while the short *ē* of the *third conj.* becomes *i* before the *t*: hence *infn.-ēre*; *present*, *-īt*.

⁷ This rule does not extend to the *irregular verbs*.

⁸ *Tense* means *time*.

QUESTIONS.

What is the change in nouns called? (5.) What, in verbs? (5.) What is the *root* of a word? (6.)—16. How many *alliterations* are there in verbs? (Four.) What are they termed? (Conjugations.) How are they known? (By the vowel before *re*.) Repeat the four lines (16).—17. (a) What is the characteristic vowel of the *first* conjugation? (ā long.) (b) What is the vowel of the *second* conjugation? (ē long.) (c) What is the vowel of the *third* conjugation? (ë short.) (d) What is the vowel of the *fourth* conjugation? (i long.)—18. What are the endings of the *four* conjugations? (āre, ēre, ëre, ire.)—19. What do these endings mark? (They mark the *infinitive* mood, which gives the simple meaning of the verb.) What does *infinitive* mean? (Note 6.) What, *mood*? (Note 6.)—20. How is this expressed in English? What is the meaning of "*ducendum est amare?*"—21. What are the *three* persons?—22. What have verbs to agree with these persons? (Three different endings.)—23. Of what person are all nouns? (Third.)—24. What do the *third* persons of verbs always end in? (t.) What particularly in the plural? (nt.)—25. Whenever a verb ends in *t*, of what person is it? (Third.) If a vowel precedes the *t*, what does it mark? (The *singular*.) If *n* precedes *t*, what does that mark? (The *plural*.)—26. When the nominative to a verb *performs* the action expressed by the verb, what is the verb called? (Active verb.)—27. What do verbs express? (Actions.) How? (As *completed*, and *not-completed*.)—28. To what *time* can actions refer? (Present, past, and future.)—29. What *tense* expresses actions present or *now doing*? (Present tense.)—30. How are verbs made of the *third* person singular present tense?

Change the ending in *re*
Of infinitives, to *t*.

—31. What are the characteristic *vowels* of the *four* conjugation? (ā long, ē long, ë short, i long.) What are the *infinitive endings* of the *four* conjugations? (āre, ēre, ëre, ire.)—32. What are the *third* person present endings? (āt, ēt, ët, and it.)—33. What does short ë of the *third* conjug. become before *t* in the present tense? (i; as, *infin.* ēre, present *it*.)

EXERCISE 2.

How many declensions are there? (7.)—How are they distinguished? (By endings of the *genitive*.) What are the *five* endings? (9.)—How is the genitive known in English? (10.)—What is the place of the genitive? (Before the governing noun.) What is the *nominative case*? (11.)

Learn these words, and name the *declensions* of the nouns, and why; and the *conjugations* of the verbs, and why.

[Words in the Exercise, and not in the Vocabulary, have been used before; if not remembered, refer to preceding Vocabularies, or to the Index at the end: a hyphen separates the *root* from the termination.]

34.

Tempus, G. tempōr-is, <i>time</i> .	Fug-ēre, <i>to fly</i> .
Dies, G. di-ēi, <i>a day</i> .	Man-ēre, <i>to remain</i> .
Puer, G. puēr-i, <i>a boy</i> .	Ven-ēre, <i>to come</i> .
Vita, G. vit-ā, <i>life</i> .	D-āre, <i>to give</i> .
Imperator, G. imperatōr-is, <i>ruler</i> .	Disc-ēre, <i>to learn</i> .
Anīnus, G. anim-ī, <i>mind</i> .	Imper-āre, <i>to command</i> .
Fides, G. fid-ēi, <i>faith</i> .	Doc-ēre, <i>to teach</i> .
Justitia, G. justiti-ā, <i>justice</i> .	Aud-ēre, <i>to hear</i> .
Fundamentum, G. fundamēnt-i, <i>foundation</i> .	Am-āre, <i>to love</i> .
Anima, G. anim-ā, <i>soul</i> .	Mon-ēre, <i>to advise</i> .
Pabūlum, G. pabūl-i, <i>food</i> .	Est, <i>verb, is</i> .
Scientia, G. scienti-ā, <i>science</i> .	Que, <i>conj., and</i> (always ² joined to a word).
Præmium, G. præmi-i, <i>reward</i> .	Et, <i>conj., and</i> (not so closely ² connecting as <i>que</i>).
Honor, G. honōr-is, <i>honour</i> .	Non, <i>adv., not</i> (stands before its verb).

35. Example.	ORDER.	GEN.	NOM.	VERB.
	Lat.	Ingenii	juvenis	discit.
	Eng.	<i>Of talent</i>	<i>a youth</i>	<i>learns</i> .

Take the *nominative* first; then the *genitive*, if it has one depending on it; and next the *verb*.

Tempus fugit. Lex manet. Venit dies. Deus dat. Puer discit. Rex imp̄rat. Puēri magister

* *Et* brings into combination things before unconnected and independent: *que* adds what belongs to a thing and naturally goes with it; *que* also closes an enumeration, and is *enclitic*, that is, throws back the accent to a prior syllable.—*Zumpt*.

doct. Regis amīcus audit. Vitæ imperātor est
anīmus; fidesque est justitiae fundamentum. Anī-
mæ pabūlum est scientia. Virtutis præmium est
honor. Cœli nubes movet. Vir amat et monet.
Dāre, non nocēre. Docēre, non discēre.

What do these verbs end in? (1.) What persons end in *i*?
(Third.)

a, *the*, and the signs of and *to*, are not expressed in Latin.

A parent learns. The God of *heaven* and (use *que*)
earth hears. *Nature's* (13, *b*) law commands. The
king's friend comes. The *master's* honour remains.
The Lord loves. Virtue advises. Honour is the
reward of *virtue*. Justice commands. Science teaches.
The mind is the ruler of *life*. The foundation of *the*
earth remains. The *man's* hand moves. (My) *parents'*
honour sleeps. The time of *day* comes. God gives.
The king sleeps. Life remains. To come and to
teach. To live and to learn. To remain, not to fly.

LESSON 3.

FIRST DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

FIRST CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

36. The *first* declension has the *nom.* and *voc.* in *ā*,
and the genitive and dative in *ā*.

37. Learn the *terminations* of all the cases *singular*
and *plural*: thus,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	-ā	Nom.	-āe
Voc.	-ā	Voc.	-āe
G.	-ā	G.	-ārum
D.	-ā	Dat.	-īs
Abl.	-ā	Abl.	-īs
	{ of to in, with, from, by, &c.		
Acc.	-am	Acc.	-ās

These *endings* are to be put to the *root*; as,
Mus-*a*, G. mus-*ā*. D. mus-*ā*. Abl. mus-*ā*. Acc. mus-*am*.

38. The nouns in *a* of this declension are *feminine*, excepting the names and offices of *men*, which are *masculine*.

39. All feminine nouns and adjectives in *a* are declined after this example.

40. The characteristic vowel of the *first conjugation* of verbs is *ā* long before the *re*; as,

-āre, am-āre, *to love.*

41. The actions expressed by verbs are either *completed*, or *not-completed*.

42. Each class can refer to *three* different points of time; viz., *present*, *past*, and *future*.

43. Beginning with *not-completed* actions, the first conjugation forms the third person *singular* of these three times or *tenses* by changing *-āre* into *-āt*, *-ābit*, *-ābit*.

English signs.	INFIN.	PRESENT, or <i>now doing.</i>	IMPERF.	FUT.
	to.	do, am.	did, was.	shall, will.
	-āre	-āt	-ābit	-ābit

44. The third persons *plural* of these tenses have *n* before the *t*; thus,

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Sing.</i>	-āt	-ābit	-ābit
<i>Plur.</i>	-ant	-ābant	-ābunt ¹⁰ .

These *endings* are to be put to the *root* after *āre* is thrown away; as,

<i>Am-āre</i>	<i>{ Sing. am-āt, am-ābāt, am-ābāt.</i>
	<i>{ Plur. am-ānt, am-ābānt, am-ābānt.</i>

¹⁰ In comparative philology it cannot but be observed that the vowels are constantly substituted for each other, especially *u* for *i*, and conversely. In the 4th declen. the datives and ablatives plural are *-ibus*, or *-ubus*; in the futures of the 1st and 2nd conj. *-bit* becomes *-bunt*; in the 3rd and 4th conj. present tense, *-it* becomes *-unt*; and in many parts of the verb *esse*, to be, *sum, sumus, sunt*, become in the subjunctive, *sim, simus, sint*; in the imperative, *sit, sunto, &c., &c.*; but we cannot enter on this subject here so fully and so satisfactorily as we could wish.

45. The *endings* of the *genitives* of the *five* declensions of nouns are,

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
-æ	-ī	-īs	-īs	-īi

46. The endings of the *infinitives* of the *four* conjugations of verbs are,

I.	II.	III.	IV.
-āre	-ēre	-ēre	-īre

47. The *third* person *singular*, present tense, of the *four* conjugations, changes

I.	II.	III.	IV.
<i>Infinitive</i> , -āre	-ēre	-ēre	-īre
<i>into</i>			

Pres. tense, -āt -ēt -ēt -īt

48. In English the **ACCUSATIVE** case always *follows* the verb; in Latin put the accusative *before* the verb that governs it; as,

Lat. Mater filiam amat.

Eng. *The mother (her) daughter loves.*

Eng. constr. [The mother loves (her) daughter.]

QUESTIONS.

How many ways are nouns declined? (7.)—What does the *first* declension end in in the *genitive*? (æ.) What do the *nom.* and *voc.* end in? (ā.) Go through the terminations of all the cases of the first declension. (37.)—What do the *gen.* and *dat. sing.* end in? (æ.) What, the *nom.* and *voc. plur.*? (æ.) What is the difference in the ending of the *nom.* and *abl. sing.*? (*Nom.* ends in ā short; and *abl.* ī long.) What do the *dat.* and *abl. plur.* end in? (īs.)—38. What is the *gender* of the nouns in *a* of this declension? (*Feminine.*) What are *masculines*? (*Names and offices of men.*)—39. What words are declined after this example? How many *conjugations* of verbs are there? (16.)—What is the characteristic vowel of the *first* conjugation? (ā long.)—41. How can actions be expressed by verbs? (*Either as completed, or not-completed.*)—42. To what points of time can each class refer? (*Present, past, and future*)—43. How is

the third person sing. of each of these tenses formed in the first *conj.*? (By changing *āre* of the *infin.* into *āt* for the present; *ābūt* for the imperfect; and *ābit* for the future.) What are the English *signs* of these *tenses*? (Of the *infin.*, *to*; of the present, *do* and *am*; of the imperfect, *did*, *was*; of the future, *shall*, or *will*.)—44. What is the third *person plur.* of these tenses? (Put *n* before the *t*, making *at* into *ant*, *ābāt* into *ābānt*, and *ābit* into *ābūnt*; mind, the *future* in the plural is *abunt*, the *i* being changed into *u*.)—45. What are the endings of the *genitives* of the *five declensions*?—46. What are the endings of the *infinitives* of the *four conjugations*?—47. What is the third *person sing.* pres. tense of the *four conjugations*? (*āre* of the first becomes *āt*; *ēre* of the second becomes *ēt*; *ēre* of the third, *ēt*; and *īre* of the fourth, *īt*.)—48. Where does the *accusative* stand in *English*? Where, in *Latin*?

EXERCISE 3.

49. Name the *declensions* of the following nouns, and the *conjugations* of the verbs.

Diligentia, G. diligent-i- <i>α</i> , <i>dili-</i>	Val-ēre, to <i>prevail</i> .
<i>gence.</i>	Sper-ēre, to <i>hope</i> .
Adolescēn <i>α</i> , G. adolescent-i- <i>α</i> , <i>a</i>	Deb-ēre, to <i>owe</i> (<i>debit</i> , <i>ought</i>).
<i>young man.</i>	Nutr-ēre, to <i>nourish</i> .
Herba, G. herb- <i>α</i> , <i>herb.</i>	Vig-ēre, to <i>flourish</i> .
Āetas, G. <i>ātāt</i> - <i>is</i> , <i>age.</i>	Rump-ēre, to <i>break</i> .
Servus, G. serv-i- <i>α</i> , <i>a slave.</i>	Laud-ēre, to <i>praise</i> .
Regina, G. regin-i- <i>α</i> , <i>a queen.</i>	Monstr-are, to <i>point out</i> .
Fera, G. fer- <i>α</i> , <i>wild beast.</i>	Dare pōnas, to <i>make atone-</i>
Catēna, G. catēn-i- <i>α</i> , <i>a chain.</i>	<i>ment</i> , <i>give satisfaction</i> , <i>un-</i>
Filia, G. fili-i- <i>α</i> , <i>a daughter.</i>	<i>dergo punishment</i> (with the
Poēta, G. poēt-i- <i>α</i> , <i>a poet.</i>	<i>crime in the genitive</i>).

What are the *genitive* endings of the *five declensions*? (45.)—What, the *infin.* and *third person sing.* pres. tense endings of the *four conjugations*? (46 & 47.)—What are the English *signs* of the *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl.* cases? (*of* for the *gen.*, *to* for the *dat.*, and *in, with, from, by*, for the *abl.*)

50. Example.

ORDER. GEN. NOM. ACC. VERB.

Lat. Scientiæ amor diligentiam accedit.

Eng. *Of knowledge the love diligence excites.*

Eng. constr. [The love of knowledge excites diligence.]

Diligentia valet. Sperabat adolescens. Animus debet imperare. Terra herbas nutrit. Viget aetas. Servus reginam amabat. Fera catenam rumpit. Mater filiam laudabit. Magister poetam reginæ monstrabat.

51. The English verbs are conjugated with certain signs; thus,

PRESENT.

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>English.</i>
am-at,	(he) loves, or <i>is</i> loving.

IMPERFECT.

am-abat,	(he) <i>did</i> love, or <i>was</i> loving.
----------	---

FUTURE.

am-abit,	(he) <i>shall</i> or <i>will</i> love, or <i>be</i> loving.
----------	---

52. Words in *opposition* should be placed in Latin *close together*, or as far *apart* as possible; thus,

Eng. The queen's slave will-praise the queen's daughter.

Lat. Reginæ servus filiam reginæ laudabit.

Put the accusative *before* the verb.

The poet praises *nature* (48). The queen's slave will-praise *the queen's daughter* (52). The young-man's diligence prevails. The slave breaks *the chain*. A sailor will-love *the water*. The boy was-praising *science*, and the man did-love *justice*. The king will-give-satisfaction *to (his) daughter*.

LESSON 4.

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

ADJECTIVES.

53. The *second* declension has the Nom. and Voc. in *us, er, um*, and the genitive in *i*.

54. Learn these terminations of all the cases singular and plural of the *second* declension :

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. } - <i>ūs</i> ¹¹ , - <i>ūr</i> , - <i>um</i>	Nom. } - <i>ī</i> (neut. - <i>a</i>)
Voc. }	Voc. }
G. - <i>ī</i>	G. - <i>ōrum</i>
Dat. } - <i>ō</i>	Dat. } - <i>īs</i>
Abl. } - <i>ō</i>	Abl. }
Acc. - <i>um</i>	Acc. - <i>ōs</i> (neut. <i>a</i>)

55. The terminations *ūs* and *ūr* are generally *masculine*, those in *um* are all *neuter*.

56. Nouns in *us* of this declension mostly make the vocative in *e*; as,

Dominus, a lord. Voc. *Domine, O Lord.*

But proper names in *ius* make it *i*;
So *filius*, and *genius*¹²; *fili, geni.*

57. All *neuters* of whatever declension have the *nom. acc. and voc.* alike; and in the plural these cases always end in *a*.

58. Many nouns in *er* drop the *e* in applying the terminations; as,

Nom. *magister*, Gen. *magistri*,
a master, *of a master*.

(The *e* when it is to be dropped will be printed in italic letters in the *Vocabularies*; as in *magister*).

59. The characteristic vowel of the *second* conjugation is *ē* long before the *rs*; as,

-*ēre*, *Mon-ēre, to advise.*

¹¹ *Deus, God, has* in the *voc. Deus*; and also the *neuters*, *vitus, person*, and *pelagus, the sea.*

One noun (with its compounds) of this declension ends in *īr*: namely, *īris, a man.*

¹² *Filius, a son; genius, a genius.*

60. The *third persons singular* of the *present, imperfect, and future* tenses of *not completed actions* in the second conjugation are formed by changing the

INFIN.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	FUTURE.
-ēre	into	-ēt	-ēbat

61. The *third persons plural* take *n* before the *t* final; as,

PRESENT.	IMPERF.	FUTURE.
Sing. -ōt	-ēbāt	-ēbīt
Plur. -ent	-ēbant	-ēbunt

62. The *infinitives*, and *third persons singular and plural* of the *present, imperfect, and future* tenses of the *first and second conjugations* are,

INFINITIVES.		
1. -āre	2. -ēre	
PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Sing. { I. conj. -āt	-ābāt	-ābīt
	-ēbāt	-ēbīt
- Plur. { I. conj. -ant	-ābant	-ābunt
	-ēbant	-ēbunt

63. Nouns in *ūs* and *ēr* of this declension are *masculine*, and nouns in *um* are *neuter*; nouns in *ā* have been described in the last lesson as *feminine*, and to be of the *first declension*; therefore all **ADJECTIVES** ending in *ūs* or *ēr* for the *masc.*, *ā* for the *fem.*, and *um* for the *neuter*, are declined after these examples.

MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
ūs, ēr, II. decl.	ā, I. decl.	um, II. decl. ¹³

¹³ The three terminations are thus declined throughout:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. } -ūs	or -ēr	-ā	-ū		
Voc. } e			-ī	-ā	-ā
Gen. } ī		-āe	-ārum	-ārum	-ārum
Dat. } -ā	-āe	-ā			
Abl. } -ō	-ā	-ō			
Acc. } -um	-am	-um	-ōs	-ās	-ā

64. *Adjectives* must be of the same *number*, same *case*, and same *gender* as the nouns they explain or qualify; as,

Summum jus, summa injuria.

Extreme law (is) extreme injustice.

(Here *summum* is put in the *neut.* gender, *sing.* number, and *nom.* case; because *jus*, the word it qualifies, is *neut.* gender, *sing.* number, and *nom.* case: so *summa* is put in the *fem.* gender, *sing.* number, and *nom.* case; because *injuria* is in the *sing.* number, *fem.* gender, and *nom.* case.) The three *Nom.* endings of this adjective are,

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Summ- <i>us</i>	- <i>a</i>	- <i>um</i> .

QUESTIONS.

. Name the *genitives* of the five declensions. (1st, *æ*; 2nd, *i*; 3rd, *is*; 4th, *ūs*; 5th, *ei*.) Name the characteristic vowels of the four conjugations. (1st, *a* long before *re*; 2nd, *ē* long before *re*; 3rd, *ē* short before *re*; 4th, *i* long before *re*.) What gender are the terminations of the first declension? (*Feminines*, except the appellations of men.)—53. What are the *nom.* terminations of the second declension? (*ūs*, *ēr*, *um*.)—54. Repeat the terminations of all the cases of the second declension.—55. Of what *gender* are the terminations *ūs* and *ēr P* (*Masc.*) What, that of *um P* (*Neuter*.)—56. What do most nouns in *ūs* make the *vocative* end in *i* (*e*.) What are exceptions?—57. What cases have all *neuter* nouns alike? (*Nom.*, *acc.*, and *loc.*) What do they end in in the *plural*? (*ū*.)—58. How are many nouns in *ēr* declined? (By dropping the *e* in the *nom.* ending; *us*, *saber*, a *workman*, *G. fabri*, *dat. fabro*.)—59. What is the characteristic vowel of the second conjugation? (*ē* long before *re*; *us*, *mon-ēre*.)—60. How are the *pres.*, *imperf.*, and *fut.* tenses, third person *sing.*, formed of the second conjugation? (By changing *ēre* into *ēt* for the *pres.*; *ēbat* for the *imperf.*; and *ēbit* for the *future*.)—61. What are the third persons *plural* of these same tenses? (*Pres.*, *ent*; *imp.*, *ebant*; *fut.*, *ebunt*.) How are the *plurals* formed?—62. Repeat the endings of the *infin.*

and the pres., imp., and fut. tenses, third person of the two conjugations.—63. Of what *declension* and *gender* are nouns in *ūs*? (Second decl. and *masc.*) What are nouns in *um*? (Second decl. *neut.*) What, nouns in *ā*? (First decl. and *sem.*) Go through these endings in the order *us, a, um*. (See note 13.) How are adjectives in *us, a, um* declined? (Exactly after these examples.)—64. How are adjectives used? (In perfect *agreement* with the nouns they elucidate or qualify; viz., in the *same* number, *same* gender, and *same* case.)

EXERCISE 4.

Name the *genders*, and *declensions* of the nouns; and the *conjugation* of the verbs.

The exceptions to 30 and 55 will be marked; *m.* for *masc.*, *f.* for *sem.*, and *n.* for *neut.*

65.

Bon- <i>us-a-um</i> , adj., good.	Poculum, G. pocul- <i>i</i> , a cup.
Studiosus- <i>a-um</i> , adj., studious.	Aureus- <i>a-um</i> , adj., golden.
Cæsar, G. Cæsar- <i>is</i> , Cæsar.	Argenteus- <i>a-um</i> , adj. of silver.
Magn- <i>us-a-um</i> , great, large.	Sylva, G. sylv- <i>a</i> , a wood.
Audacia, G. audaci- <i>a</i> , bold- ness.	Merum, G. mer- <i>i</i> , wine.
Hostis, G. host- <i>is</i> , an enemy.	Herus, G. her- <i>i</i> , master (of a slave).
Parvus- <i>a-um</i> , adj., little.	Roma, G. Romæ, Rome.
Industria, G. industri- <i>a</i> , in- dustry.	
Numerus, G. numer- <i>i</i> , num- ber.	Aug-ēre, to increase.
Pulcher- <i>ra-rum</i> , adj., beautiful.	Don-ēre, to present.
Liberi, G. liber- <i>orum</i> , plur. children.	Impl-ēre, to fill.
	Dol-ēre, to grieve.
	Nunc, <i>adv.</i> , now.

66. Example.

ORDER.	ADJ.	NOM.	ACC.	ADJ.	VERB.
Lat.	Boni	parentes	liberos	suos	fovebunt
Eng.	Good	parents	children	their-own	will-cherish.

Eng. construction. [Good parents will-cherish their own children.]

67. Adjectives generally stand *before* their nouns, except *meus* (*my*), *tuus* (*thy*), *suus* (*his, hers, its*), and some other little words, and *monosyllables*.

68. Words that usually precede, must give place to the *more emphatic*; that is, the more emphatic must come *first* (13, b).

69. When a *genitive* is governed by a noun which has an adj. with it, put the genitive *between* the adj. and noun.

The boys' great diligence.

ADJ.	GEN.	NOM.
Magna	puerorum	diligentia.

70. *Bonus magister studiosos pueros docebit.* Cæsar *magnam audaciam hostis* (68) *non auget.* *Parva puerorum industria magnum numerum dolcebat.* *Pulchra mater bonas filias amare debet* (49). *Magna regina pocula aurea argenteaque viris donabat.* *Nunc vident sylve* (68).

Where do *adjectives* usually stand?—67. Where do *emphatic words* stand? 68.

The king was-filling the large cup with-wine. A good slave will-praise his (67) master (65). The great man's sons will-see Rome. The good young-man advises the great poet's (m) daughter. The masters were-praising *the boys' great diligence* (69). The beautiful slaves were pointing-out *the king's beautiful daughters* (69). The boy's master now loves the slave's master (65).

LESSON 5.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

THIRD CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

71. The *third* declension has the nom. and voc. ending in *various* terminations, but the genitive is in *is*.

72. Learn these terminations of all the cases *singular* and *plural* of the third declension.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom. }	<i>various.</i>	Nom. }	
Voc. }		Voc. }	-ēs.
G.	-īs	G.	-ūm and iūm.
Dat.	-ī	Dat. }	-ībus.
Abl.	-ē (some have abl. in ī)	Abl. }	
Acc.	-ēm (some have acc. in -im)	Acc.	(like nom. and voc.)

73. The endings of the nom. of this declension are,

Vowels, a e i o y.

Consonants, x c l n s t r¹⁴.

74. The genders of the terminations of this declension may be comprised in these lines ;

There are exceptions we confess ;
But MASC'INES end in *er, or, os, and o,*
And nouns *increasing* ending *es.*

But every other word in *s,*
A few in *us,* with *io, go, and do,*
And *x, are FEMALE, if you please.*

But *ar, ur, us, and other vowels than o,*
With *c, l, n and t, are NEUTER tho'.*

75. Remember that *neuter* nouns have the *nom., acc., and voc., alike ;* in the plural these cases end in *a.*

76. The characteristic vowel of the *third* conjugation is *ē* short, before the *re* ; as,

-ēre, reg-ēre, to rule.

77. The *third* persons singular of the *present, imper-*

¹⁴ Or they may be borne in mind by some such mnemonic attempt as this,

Remember all the vowels but *u*
With *Ecce, Ellen, Esther* too.
(*xc l n st r*)

fect, and *future* tenses of *not-completed* actions in the third conjugation, are formed by changing the

INFIN.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	FUT.
- <i>ere</i>	<i>into</i>	- <i>it</i>	- <i>ebat</i>

78. The third persons *plural* take *n* before the *t*, but the *i* of the *present* becomes *u*, like in the *futures* of the first and second conjugations.

	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	FUT.
<i>Sing.</i>	- <i>it</i>	- <i>ebat</i>	- <i>et</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	- <i>unt</i>	- <i>ebant</i>	- <i>ent</i> .

79. The *infinitives*, and third persons *sing.* and *plur.* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the first, second, and third conjugations are,

INFINITIVES.

	I. - <i>āre</i>	II. - <i>ēre</i>	III. - <i>ēre</i> .
	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Sing.</i>	1. conj. - <i>āt</i>	- <i>ābāt</i>	- <i>ābit</i>
	II. conj. - <i>ēt</i>	- <i>ēbāt</i>	- <i>ēbit</i>
	III. conj. - <i>it</i>	- <i>ēbāt</i>	- <i>ēt</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	I. conj. - <i>ānt</i>	- <i>ābānt</i>	- <i>ābunt</i>
	II. conj. - <i>ēnt</i>	- <i>ēbānt</i>	- <i>ēbunt</i>
	III. conj. - <i>unt</i>	- <i>ēbānt</i>	- <i>ent</i> .

80. *Adjectives* ending in any of the consonants of this declension are declined like (72): those in *is* have the neuter in *e* and the neuter plural in *ia*: the *abl.* sing. ends in *i*, and the *gen.* plur. in *ium*.

81. *Adjectives* in the *masculino* gender without a noun, agree with *man* understood; in the *feminine*, with *woman* understood; in the *neuter* they agree with *thing* understood; as,

Fortes *fortūna* *adjuvat*,
The bravo *fortune* *helps*.
 (Fortune helps the bravo [men.])

(Here *fortes* is *masc.* and implies *the brave men*; *homines* or *viro* the Latin for *men* being understood.)

QUESTIONS.

71. Which is the genitive ending of the third declension? (īs.)—72. Go through the endings singular and plural.—73. What are the *vowel* endings of the nom. of this declension? (All but *u.*) What are the *consonant* endings? (note ¹⁴.)

Ecce, Ellen, Esther,
xc l n sl r.

74. Repeat the lines conveying the genders.—75. What cases of *neuters* are alike? What are they in the plural? (In *c.*)—76. What is the characteristic vowel of the third conj.? (ē short.)—77. How are the third persons sing. of the pres., imperf., and future of *not-completed* actions formed in the third conj.? (By changing the *inf.* ēre into ēi for the pres., ēbāt for the imperf., and ēt for the future.)—78. What are the third persons *plural* of these tenses? (i. of the pres. becomes *unt*; ēbāt of the imperf. becomes *ēbant*; and ēt of the future becomes *ent*.)—79. Repeat the *infinitives*, and third persons sing. and plur. of these three tenses in the first, second, and third conjugations?—80. How are *adjectives* not in *us* or *er-a-um* declined? (Like the example of the third declension in 72.)—What are the *neuters* of *adjectives* in *is*? (e in the sing., ia plural.)—What is the *abl.* sing.? (i.)—What the *gen.* plural? (ium.)—80. What do *adjectives* *without* a noun agree with? (If *masc.* with *man* understood; if *sem.* with *woman* understood; if *neuter*, with *thing* understood.)

EXERCISE 5.

m. denotes masculine, *f.* feminine, *n.* neuter.

82.

Sapiens, G. sapient- <i>is</i> , adj., wise.	Mors, G. mort- <i>is</i> , (<i>f.</i>) death.
Beāt- <i>us-a-um</i> , adj., happy.	Romān- <i>us-a-um</i> , adj. Roman.
Rector, G. rectōr- <i>is</i> , a ruler.	Romulus, G. Romul- <i>i</i> , Romu- lus.
Humān- <i>us-a-um</i> , adj., human.	Exordium, G. exordi- <i>i</i> , begin- ning.
Genus, G. genēr- <i>is</i> , (<i>n.</i>) a race.	Britannus, G. Britann- <i>i</i> , a Bri- ton.
Vinum, G. vin- <i>i</i> , (<i>n.</i>) wine.	Frumentum, G. frument- <i>i</i> , corn.
Sol, G. sōl- <i>is</i> , (<i>m.</i>) the sun.	Lac, G. lact- <i>is</i> , (<i>n.</i>) milk.
Mundus, G. mund- <i>i</i> , (<i>m.</i>) the world.	
Lux, G. luc- <i>is</i> , (<i>f.</i>) light.	

Turpis, (neut. c.) G. <i>turp-is</i> , base.	Caro, G. <i>carn-is</i> , flesh.
A, <i>prep.</i> , from, by (followed by the abl. case; it becomes <i>ab</i> before vowels, and <i>abs</i> be- fore <i>q</i> and <i>t</i>).	Vet- <i>āre</i> , to forbid.
Suis- <i>a-um</i> , always must be used for <i>his, hers, its</i> , when it means or refers to the nominalive of the verb.	Impl- <i>ēre</i> , to fill.
	Macul- <i>āre</i> , to stain.
	Ser- <i>ēre</i> , to sow.
	Viv- <i>ēre</i> , to live.
	Sed, <i>conj.</i> , but (<i>sed</i> implies a change of subject; <i>autem</i> , an addition to, or continua- tion of the subject.)
	Semper, <i>adv.</i> , always.

83. The parts of the verb *est*, *is*, *sunt*, *are*, &c. are often understood in Latin; as,

Præmium virtutis honor
The reward of virtue honor.

Eng. construction. [Honor (*is*) the reward of virtue.]

84. Example.

Animus erit rector humani generis.
The mind will be the-ruler of-the human race.

85. *Sapientis* est semper *beatus*. *Animus* (83) *rector* (68) *humani generis*. *Plato*¹⁵ *vinum pueris vetat*. *Sol implet mundum* (68) *luce suā*. *Pausanias*¹⁵ *magnam bellum gloriam turpi morte maculabat*. *Romanum imperium a Romulo exordium habet*. *Britanni frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt*.

Where stand the acc.? (Before the governing verb.) Where do adverbs stand? (Before their verbs.)

(a) *Not*, and other adverbs in English, stand between the verb and its signs, *do*, *are*, *did*, *was*, *shall*, *will*, &c.; as, "Plato *does not live*." And these signs are not expressed in Latin.

*Pausanias*¹⁵ stains *his* glory. The Roman empire did have (its) beginning from *Romulus*. A happy (81) man is not always wise. *Plato*¹⁵ *does not live*. All (81) men will not *forbid* wine to boys. The sun will not fill the world with *his* light. Wise (men) sow corn. He stains *his* glory.

¹⁵ Proper names when the same in Latin as in English are not inserted in the Vocabularies.

LESSON 6.

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

FOURTH CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

86. The *fourth* declension has the nom. and voc. in *īs*, and the genitive in *īs*.

87. Learn these terminations of all the cases *singular* and *plural* of the fourth declension.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	<i>neut.</i>
Nom. } -īs		Nom. } -īs	-īa
Voc. } -īs		Voc. } -īs	
Gen. -īs		Gen. -īum	
Dat. -īi		Dat. } -ībus &	
Abl. -ī		Abl. } -ībus	
Acc. -īum		Acc. (as nom.)	

88. The nouns in *ī* of this declension are *neuter*, and are not declined in the *sing.* They are declined in the *plural* as above, making the nom., acc., and voc. in *īa*.

89. The nouns in *īs* are nearly all *masculine* : these are the *feminines*.

Acus, <i>a needle</i>	manus, <i>a hand</i>	socrus, <i>a mother-in-law</i>
Anus, <i>an old woman</i>	nurus, <i>daughter-in-</i>	quercus, <i>an oak</i>
Domus, <i>a house</i>	law	tribus, <i>a tribe</i> .
Ficus, <i>a fig</i>	portus, <i>a portico</i>	

90. These words following have in *dat.* and *abl.* plural *-ībus*.

Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus, lacus, artus
Et tribus, *et* partus ; specus *adde* veruque, pecuque¹⁶.—Zumpt.

¹⁶ The above are hexameters from Zumpt ; this may suit the memory better :—

Arcus, acus, portus, veru,
 Ficus, lacus, artus,
 Specus, quercus, also pecu,
 Tribus too, and partus.

Arcus, *a bow* ; portus, *a harbour* ; lacus, *a lake* ; artus, *a limb* ; partus, *a birth* ; specus, *a cave* ; veru, *a spit* ; pecu, *cattle* ; acus, &c. See 89.

91. The characteristic vowel of the *fourth* conjugation is *ē* long before the *re*; as

-īre aud-īre, to hear.

92. The *third* persons singular of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of *not-completed* actions in the *fourth* conjugation are formed by changing the

INFIN. PRESENT. IMPERFECT. FUTURE.

-īre into -īt -ībāt -īt̄

93. The *third* persons *plural* take *n* before the *t*; as

PRESENT. IMPERF. FUTURE.

Sing. -īt -ībāt -īt̄

Plur. -īunt -ībānt -īt̄nt

94. The *infinitives* and *third* persons sing. and plur. of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *four* conjugations are as follows, and should be learnt by heart.

INFINITIVES.

I. -īre. II. -ēre. III. -ēre. IV. -īre.

PRESENT. IMPERFECT. FUTURE.

Sing.	I. -īt	-ībāt	-ībīt
	II. -ēt	-ēbāt	-ēbīt
	III. -īt	-ēbāt	-ēt̄
	IV. -īt	-ībāt	-īt̄
Plur.	I. -īnt	-ībānt	-ībūnt
	II. -ēnt	-ēbānt	-ēbūnt
	III. -īnt	-ēbānt	-ēnt̄
	IV. -īunt	-ībānt	-īnt̄nt̄

95. (a) The *infinitive* mood of a verb may be used as a substantive of the *Nom.* or *Acc.* case, and is of the *neuter* gender (19); so that adjectives in agreement must also be neuter, as,

Lat. *Jucundum est amare.*

Eng. *Pleasant is to-love.*

Eng. construction. [To-love is pleasant.]

(b) Or the verb (not in the infinitive) may be taken *first* with "it" prefixed; as, *It is pleasant to love.*

QUESTIONS.

86. What are the nom. and voc. endings of the fourth declension? (*īs.*)—87. Repeat the terminations of all the cases, sing. and plur.—88. What are nouns in *u?* (Neuter.) How are they declined?—89. What is the gender of nouns in *īs?* (Masc. generally.) What are the *feminines?*—90. What words have dat. and abl. plur. in *ībus?*—91. What is the characteristic vowel of the fourth conj.? (ī long before *re.*)—92. How are the third pers. sing. of the *pres.*, *imperf.*, and *future* tenses formed?—93. How do you form the third pers. plur.?—94. Repeat the *infinitives* and third pers. *sing.* and *plur.* of the *present*, *imperf.* and *future* tenses of all the conjugations.—95. How may infinitives be used? (As *neuter* nouns.) In what cases? (Nom. and acc.)

EXERCISE 6.

96.

Luctus, G. luct-īs, <i>m.</i> , grief.	Len-īre, to mitigate.
Metus, G. met-īs, <i>m.</i> fear.	Excruci-āre, to torture.
Studium, G. studi-i, <i>n.</i> study.	Nesc-īre, not-to-know.
Adolescentia, G. adolescenti-ā, <i>f.</i> youth.	Al-ēre, to nourish; improve.
Fletus, G. flet-īs, <i>m.</i> weeping.	Oblect-āre, to delight.
Senectus, G. senectut-īs, <i>f.</i> old-age.	In, <i>prep.</i> into (signifying motion takes the <i>acc.</i> case); in (signifying <i>at rest</i> takes the <i>abl.</i> case).
Difficilis, difficult, <i>adj.</i> difficult.	Ad, <i>prep.</i> to (followed by <i>acc.</i> case).
Urbs, G. urb-īs, <i>f.</i> a city.	Semper, <i>adv.</i> always.
Hostis, G. host-īs, <i>m.</i> an enemy.	
Currus, G. curr-īs, <i>m.</i> a chariot.	
Innocens, innocent-īs, <i>adj.</i> innocent.	
Dominus, G. domin-i, } <i>m.</i>	of property.
Magister, G. magistr-i, } <i>m.</i> master	who teaches.
Hens, G. her-i, } <i>m.</i>	of slaves.

97. Example.

Lat. *Sinus metum nescit.*

Eng. The *bosom* *fear* *knows-not.*

Eng. constr. [The *bosom* *knows not* *fear.*]

Luctus et metus animum semper exercent. Studia adolescentiam alunt, oblectant senectutem. Difficile est judicare. Caesar parvum in urbe (99) dormiebat. Hostis currum audierat. Rex magnam ad urbem nunc veniret. Metum nescire (98) jucundum est.

98. When *infinitives* are used as *nouns*, they can govern their cases as usual.

99. When a *preposition* governs a *substantive*, having an *adjective* with it, place the *preposition* between the *adjective* and the *substantive*; thus,

ORDER. Adjective. Preposition. Noun.
Parvum in urbe.

Where stands the acc.? (Before the verb.) Where stands the prep. governing an adj. and noun in agreement? (99)

It is (95, b) disgraceful (95, a) to-torture the innocent (81) (or to-torture the innocent is disgraceful). The enemy will-sleep in the little (99) city. Weeping mitigates his (82. 67) grief. Caesar was-coming to (96) the city. Time improves youth: ease delights old-age. The horses will-bear (their) masters. Fear will always (85, a) torture men's minds.

LESSON 7.

FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

100. The *fifth* declension has the *Nom.* and *Voc.* in *ēs*, and the *Gen.* in *ei*.

101. (a) Learn the terminations of all the cases, *sing.* and *plur.*, of the *fifth* declension.

(b) The *plural* is complete alone in these: *dies*, *species*, and *res*¹⁷.

¹⁷ *Dies*, a day; *species*, an appearance; *res*, a thing: Cicero objects to the gen. plural *specierum*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom. }	-ēs	Nom. }	-ēs
Voc. }		Voc. }	-ēs
Gen. }	-ei	Acc. }	,
Dat. }	-ēi	Gen.	-ērum
Abl. }	-ē	Dat. }	{ only in dies, species, & res.
Acc.	-ēm	Abl. }	

102. Nouns of this declension are *feminine*.

Dies is masc. and fem. in *sing.*, and masc. in the *plur.* *Meridies* is masc. and has *no plural*.

103. Adjectives form their *comparative* degree by adding to the *root*, *-iōr* for masc. and fem., and *-iūs* for the neuter: as,

COMPARATIVE.

root.	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
<i>doct-us,</i> <i>learned,</i>	<i>doct-iōr,</i> <i>more learned.</i>	<i>doct-iūs.</i>

104. (a) The *superlative* degree is formed by adding to the *root*,

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>-issimus</i>	<i>-issima</i>	<i>-issimum:</i>

as,

SUPERLATIVE.

<i>root.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>Doct-us</i> <i>learned</i>	<i>doct-issimus</i>	<i>-a</i>	<i>-um.</i>

most-learned.

(b) These adjectives form the *superlative*:

Those in *er*, by adding *-rīmus*;

Some in *lis*, change *is* to *-līmus*: as,

In *er*—*pulcher*, fair; *pulcher-rīmus*, fairest;

In *lis*—*facilis*, easy; *facil-līmus*, easiest.

105. (a) The tenses of verbs for *Not-completed* actions are *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*.

NOT-COMPLETED or actions *doing*.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>D</i> <i>ing</i> , now.	<i>Doing</i> , at a time <i>past</i> .	<i>Doing</i> , at a time <i>to come</i> .
I am writing	I <i>was</i> writing <i>now</i> .	I will write <i>to-morrow</i> .

(b) The tenses for *completed* actions are also three, and refer, like the others, to times or actions *present*, *past*, or *to come*; they are the *PERFECT*, *PLUPERFECT*, and the *FUTURE PERFECT*.

COMPLETED, or actions *done*.

PERFECT, sign <i>hate</i> .	PLUPERFECT, <i>had</i> .	FUT. <i>shall</i> or <i>will</i> <i>have</i> .
<i>Done</i> , now.	<i>Done</i> , at a time <i>past</i> .	<i>Done</i> , at a time <i>to come</i> .
I wrote, or have written	I had written	I shall have written <i>now</i> .

106. The third persons *sing.* of the three tenses for *completed* actions, in the *first* and *fourth* conjugations, are formed by changing the *re* of the infinitive into *tit*, *rirot*, *ririt*. (See note ⁵.)

INI IN.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUTURE PERF.
Sign. <i>to hate</i>	<i>hate</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>shall</i> or <i>will have</i> .
I. -āre	-āvit	-āvērat	-āvērit
IV. -īre	-īvit	-īvērat	-īvērit.

107. The third persons *plural* are formed by changing in *all the conjugations*, *-it* of the perfect into *-ērunt* or *ēre*; and in the *pluperf.* and *fut.* by putting *n* before the *t* of the *sing.*

	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUTURE PERF.
Sing.	I. -āvit	-āvērat	-āvērit
Plur.	-āvērunt or -avēro	-āvērant	-āvērint
Sing.	IV. -īvit	-īvērat	-īvērit
Plur.	-īvērunt or -ivēre.	-īvērant	-īvērint

QUESTIONS.

100. What is the ending of the nom. and voc. of the fifth declension? (es.) What of the genitive? (ei.)—101. (a) Repeat the terminations of all the cases *singular* and *plural* of the *fifth* declension. (b) What nouns only are complete in the plural?—102. Of what *gender* are the nouns of this declension?—103. How do adjectives form their *comparative* degree? (By adding to the *root*, -ior for mas. and fem., and -ius for neut.)—104. (a) How do adjectives form the *superlative* degree? (By adding to the *root*, *issimus-a-um*.) (b) How do those in *er* and *lis* form their *superlative*?—105. (a) What are the tenses for *not-completed* actions? (*Present, imperfect, future.*) (b) What, for *completed* actions? (*Perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect.*)—106. How do the first and fourth conjugations form their three tenses for *completed* actions in the third person singular? (By changing *re* of the *infinitive* into *rit*, *terat*, and *terit*.)—107. How are the third persons *plural* formed? (The *perfect* changes *it* into *-ērunt* and *-ēre*; and the *pluperfect* and *future perfect* put *n* before *t* of the *sing.*)

EXERCISE 7.

108.

Sapiens, G. sapient- <i>is</i> , adj.	Pulcher-chra-chrum, adj. fair, wise.
Magnus- <i>a-um</i> , adj. great.	Lenis, <i>m.</i> & <i>f.</i> lene, <i>n.</i> adj. gentle.
Gloria, G. glori- <i>e</i> , glory.	Omnis, <i>m.</i> & <i>f.</i> omne, <i>n.</i> adj. all.
Turpis, <i>m.</i> & <i>f.</i> turpe, <i>neut.</i> adj. base.	Vicissitudo, G. -dūn- <i>is</i> , <i>f.</i> change.
Mors, G. mort- <i>is</i> , <i>f.</i> death.	Spes, G. sp- <i>ei</i> , <i>f.</i> hope.
Human- <i>us-a-um</i> ¹⁸ , adj. human, polite.	Validus- <i>a-um</i> , adj. strong.
Studium, G. studi- <i>i</i> , study.	Erat, verb, was.
Macul-āre, to stain.	Orn-āre, to adorn.
Bene, <i>adv.</i> well.	Miser-era-erum, adj., miserable.
Res secundæ, <i>plural</i> , prosperity.	Res, G. rei, a thing, affair;
Res adversæ, <i>plural</i> , adversity.	secundus- <i>a-um</i> , prosperous;
	adversus- <i>a-um</i> , adverse.

¹⁸ The substantive *humanitas* means *classical learning*; and *literæ*, means the *sciences*, and *knowledge generally*.

109. Example.

Lat. *Suam regina faciem pulcherrimam putaverat.*
 Eng. *Her own the queen face most-beautiful had-thought.*

English construction. [The queen had thought her own face the most beautiful.]

Socrates sapientissimus (81) erat. *Pausanias magnam bellum gloriam turpissimam morte macularat.* *Humaniora studia secundas res ornarunt.* *Pulcherrima Dido bene dormierit.* *Lenissima omnium rerum vicissitudo spem validorem dabit.*

The signs *have* and *has* of the perfect are in English often omitted;

I have loved, or I loved.
Dido has loved, or Dido loved.

The *wisest* (man. 81) was Socrates. Fair Dido *thought* (*perf.*) her-own condition (142) *most miserable*. Prosperity and the change of affairs will-give *stronger* hope. Pausanias *stained* the glory of the great war by a *baser* death. The *strongest* hope of glory *slept*. The *basest* studies *had-stained* the young-man's glory.

EXERCISE 8.

110. (a) *Than* after a comparative degree, when *omitted* in Latin, requires the following noun to be in the *ablative* case if the persons or things compared possess a *portion* of the same quality; as,

Lat. *Tullus Hostilius erat ferocior Romulo.*
 Eng. *Tullus Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus.*

Where Romulus had a portion of the quality expressed by the adj. *ferocior*; he was a *bold* man, but Tullus Hostilius was *bolder*.

(b) When *than* is expressed by *quam*, the person or thing compared is in the *same* case as the person or thing with which it is compared; and is supposed *not to*

possess any portion of the quality of the adjective; as,

Lat. Romulus erat ferocior *quam* Numa.
Eng. Romulus was more-warlike *than* Numa.

Where Numa possesses *none* of the quality of the adj. *ferocior*; for Numa was *not warlike*; if he had been, *quam* would have been *omitted*, and *Numa* would have been in the *ab.*

111.

Nihil, <i>n.</i> (indeclined,) nothing.	Amabilis, <i>m.</i> & <i>f.</i> -ile, <i>n.</i> adj. amiable.
Carus- <i>a-um</i> , adj. precious, dear.	Ferrum, G. ferr- <i>i</i> , iron.
Scienti- <i>a</i> , G. - <i>a</i> , <i>f.</i> knowledge.	Aurum, G. aur- <i>i</i> , gold.
Ferox, G. ferōc- <i>is</i> , adj. war- like, bold.	Præstans, præstan- <i>is</i> , adj. ex- cellent.
Velox, G. velōc- <i>is</i> , adj. swift.	Argentum, G. - <i>nt-i</i> , silver.
Taurus, G. taur- <i>i</i> , a bull.	Canis, G. can- <i>is</i> , <i>m.</i> a dog.
Quam, <i>conj.</i> than.	Est, verb, <i>is</i> , Erat, verb, <i>was</i> .

What case does *than* after a comparative require? (110, *a*) (*Ablative*, if *than* is not expressed.) What, if *than* is expressed by *quam*? (The persons or things compared are in the *same* case.) (*b*)

112. Nihil est *virtute* amabilius. Justitia est *carior auro*. Virtus est *justitiā carior*. Virtus est *scientiā præstantior*. Carior *quam* aurum est justitia. Caesar ferocior erat *quam* Cicero. Scientia est *præstantior gloriā*. Adolescentia *quam* senectus est innocentior. Magister sapientior *puero* liberos pulchros docet. Secundæ res (108) *quam* res adverse sunt *præstantiores*. Omnes (83) non sapientes. Nescire (95, *a*) non sapiens (83). Hominis vitam studium bene ornavit.

[Without *Quam* (110, *a*).] Nothing is more excellent *than* virtue. Gold is more-precious *than* silver. The horse is swifter *than* the dog. The boy is *bolder than* the man.

[With *Quam* (110, *b*).] Gold is more precious *than* iron. The dog is swifter *than* the bull. Fairest Dido was more-amiable *than* Cassandra. The father was more warlike *than* the son, but (82) the son was more-amiable *than* the father.

LESSON 8.

THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

(Recapitulation.)

113. (a) The first declension has its nom. in *ā*,
and gen. in *ā*.

(b) The second declension has its nom. in
er, us, and um, and gen. in *ī*.

(c) The third declension has its

Nom'native in all the *consonants* but *u*,
With *x, c, l, n, s, t, r*, too.—(See note 14, p. 20.)

And the gen. in *is*.

(d) The fourth declension has its nom. in *ās*,
and gen. in *ās*.

(e) The fifth declension has its nom. in *ēs*, and
gen. in *ei*.

114. ENDINGS OF ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

SINGULAR.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Nom. } <i>the</i>	-ā	-ēr -ēs -ēm	(various)	-ēs -ē	-ēs
Voc. } <i>O</i>	-ā	-ī	-īs	-ēs	-ēī
Gen. } <i>of</i>	-ā	-ō	-ī	-ēs	-ēī
Dat. } <i>to</i>	-ā	-ō	-ī	-ēl	-ēl
Abl. } <i>in, with,</i> } <i>from, by</i>	-ā	-ō	-ē or i	-ē	-ē
Acc. } <i>the</i>	-ām	-ēm	-ēm or -ēm	-ēm	-ēm

PLURAL.

Nom. } <i>the</i>	-ā	I & a	-ēs	-ēs & ue	-ēs
Voc. } <i>O</i>	-ā	-ērūm	-ērūm	-ērūm	-ērūm
Gen. } <i>of</i>	-ārūm	-ērūm	-ērūm & ūm	-ērūm	-ērūm
Dat. } <i>to</i>	-ā	-ī	-ēbus	-ēbus	-ēbus
Abl. } <i>in, with,</i> } <i>from, by</i>	-ā	-ī	-ēbus	-ēbus & ūbus	-ēbus
Acc. } <i>the</i>	-ās	-ēs & a	-ēs	-ēs & ue	-ēs

115. Repeat the *genitives* singular and plural of all the declensions.

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
-ae	-i	-is	-us	-ei

The gen. plural always end in *um*¹⁹.

-arum -orum -um or ium -uum, -crum.

116. Repeat the *acc.* sing. of all the declensions.

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
-am	-um	-em	-um	-em.

117. The *datives* and *ablatives* plural are alike; the first and second end in *is*, and the others in *bus*.

118. The *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* plural of all nouns, except those in *a* of the first, and *er* and *us* of the second, are alike.

	For all neuters.	III. and V. declension	IV. declension.
Nom. }			
Acc. } <i>plural</i>	-a	-es	-us.
Voc. }			

119. The **PERFECT**, **PLUPERFECT**, and **FUTURE-PERFECT** tenses for *completed actions* in the Second conjugation are formed in the third person sing. by changing -*ere* of the infinitive into -*uit*, -*uerat*, -*uerit*.

INFIN.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
-ere	-uit	-uerat	-uerit.

¹⁹ The *genitives plural* of Latin nouns, properly speaking, all end in *rum*; the proneness of the language to abbreviation, however, has favoured an apparent irregularity, which is thus evident:

	GENITIVE PLURAL.	GEN. ABBREVIATED.
I. Decl.	caelicola,	caelicolarum,
II. Decl.	triumvir,	triumvirorum,
	noster,	nostrorum,
III. Decl.	parent,	parentorum (obsolete), parenti- <i>um</i> , & parent- <i>um</i> .
	sponsalia, pl.	sponsali- <i>orum</i> ,
IV. Decl.	domus,	domorum,
v. Decl.	res,	rerum (only <i>res</i> and <i>dies</i> have a gen. plural). [Cicero condemns <i>speciem</i> <i>um</i> . Zumpt.]

120. The *plurals* of these tenses in the third person are formed *alike* in all the conjugations:

Perfect changes *-it* into *-ērunt* or *-ēre*
Pluperfect } put *n* before *t*, { *-uērant* } for *plural*.
Fut. Perf. } { *-uērint*

PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
<i>Sing.</i> -uit	-uērat	-uērit.
<i>Plur.</i> -uērunt or -uēre	-uērant	-uērint.

QUESTIONS.

113. Name the nominative and genitive endings of the *five* declensions.—114. Go through the endings of *all* the declensions.—115. What is the *gen.* sing. and plur. of all the declensions?—116. What, the *acc.* sing.?—117. What, the *datives* and *ablatives*?—118. What are the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* plural endings of nearly all nouns? (*Alike.*) What are the exceptions? (Those in *a* of the first decl., and *us* and *er* of the second decl.) What are the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* plural endings of *neuter* nouns? Of all nouns of the third decl.? Of the fourth decl.? Of the fifth decl.?—119. How are the *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses third person sing. of the second conj. formed?—120. How are their *plurals* formed? How are these tenses and persons, sing. and plur., formed in the first and fourth conjugations? (106 and 107.)—Are the *plurals* of these tenses formed *alike* in all the conjugations? (*Yes.*)

EXERCISE 9.

121.

Numerus, G. -cri, number.	Thymus, G. -ymi, thyme.
Miles, G. milit-is, a soldier.	Frigidus-a-um, adj. cold.
Mel, G. mell-is, n. honey.	Amīcus-a-um, adj. friendly.
Glacies, G. glaci-ēi, f. ice.	Roma, G. Rom-ē, Rome.
Dux, G. duc-is, m. a leader.	Duplic-ēre, to double.
Populus, G. -ul̄s, the people.	Mon-ēre, to advise.
Senator, G. -ōris, senator.	Hab-ēre, to have.
Servus, G. -vi, slave.	Non, adv. not.

Example.

- Ille nullum filium callidiorē habuit quam Phormionē.
He no son more-cunning had than Phormio.
 English construction. [He had no son more-cunning than Phormio.]

122. Scientia est præstantior auro. Priscus numerum senatorum duplicavit. Cæsar multos milites habuit. Senatores multos servos haberunt. Mel est dulcior thymo. Nihil est glacie frigidius. Duces quam regina amiciores populos monuerunt.

How are the *endings* of nouns and verbs applied? (To the root.) What is the *root* of a word? (The part of a word *not* changed, and which in nouns always precedes the *genitive* endings, and in verbs the *infinitive* endings.)

The senators doubled the number of the slaves. The queen had not many soldiers *more-friendly than* her people. Honey is sweeter *than* (use *quam*) thyme. Cæsar had-advised (his) soldiers. The leaders of the soldiers were *more-friendly than* the senators of Rome. Good silver is *more-excellent than* bad gold.

LESSON 9.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. (*Recapitulation.*)

TENSES OF VERBS.

123. Some adjectives have *three* terminations, one for each gender:

us or *er* for the *masc.*

a for the *fem.*

um for the *neut.*

124. (a) The endings *us*, *er*, and *um* are of the second declension, and *a* is of the *first*; learn their *endings* throughout; as,

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
II. dec.	I. dec.	II. dec.	II. dec.	I. dec.	II. dec.
Nom. } -us & er	-a	-um	Nom. } -i	-æ	-a
Voc. } -e			Voc. } -i		
G. -i	-æ	-i	G. -orum	-arum	-orum
D. -o	-æ	-o	D. } -is		
Abl. -o	-æ	-o	Abl. } -is for all genders		
Acc. -um	-am	-um	Acc. -os	-as	-a

(b) Some adjectives in *er* lose the *e*; and some retain the *e*; as,

(keep the <i>e</i> .)			(lose the <i>e</i> ²⁰ .)				
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>		
Nom. }	tener	-era	-erum,	Nom. }	piger	-gra	-grum,
Voc. }	&c.	&c.		Voc. }	&c.	&c.	&c.

125. Adjectives *not* of *three* terminations are declined like the third declension of nouns.

(a) Those in *is* have a *neuter* form for the nom., acc., and voc. in *o* in the singular, which becomes *ia* for these cases in the plural; thus,

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>m.</i> & <i>f.</i>	<i>neut.</i>		<i>m.</i> & <i>f.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	
Nom. }			Nom. }		
Voc. }	trist-is		Voc. }	trist-es	trist-ia.
Acc. }	trist- <i>em</i>	trist- <i>o</i> .	Acc. }		

[The other cases are like all nouns of the third declension.]

(b) The comparatives in *or* have a *neuter* for the nom., acc., and voc. singular in *us*, which becomes *ōra* for these cases in the plural; thus,

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>m.</i> & <i>f.</i>	<i>neut.</i>		<i>m.</i> & <i>f.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	
Nom. }			Nom. }		
Voc. }	meli-or	meli-us.	Voc. }	meliōr-es	meli-ōra
Acc. }			Acc. }		

[The singular *neuter* is formed by changing *or* into *us*; for the plural add *a* to the *or*. The other cases are like all the nouns of the third decl.]

126. The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses of the *Third* conjugation are formed differently

²⁰ Piger drops the *e*, with ruber, seger,
And seaber, ater, macer,
Sinister, niger, pulcher, creber,
And vasfer, fater, sacer.

from the other conjugations: they are very irregular, and require some attention. (See note 3, page 57.)

(a) First change *ēre* of the *infinitive* like the other conjugations into *-it*, *-erat*, *-erit*, if the verb ends in a *voiced*;

as, *acu-it*, *acu-erat*, *acu-erit*;

But if the verb ends in a *consonant*, add *s* to the *root*; thus,

INFIN.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
-ēre	-s-it	-s-ērat	-s-ērit.

as,

carp-ēre (*to pluck*) *carps-it* *carps-ērat* *carps-ērit*.

(b) Roots ending in a *p* sound (as *b*, *p*,) become *p* before the *s*; as,

inf. *scrib-ēre* (*to write*); *perf.* *scrips-it* (*not scribs-it*); *pluperf.* *scrips-ērat*; *fut. perf.*, *scrips-ērit*.

(c) Roots ending in a *k* sound (as *c*, *g*, *ct*, *qu*) or *h*, unite with the *s* and become *x*; as,

ducs-it (*dūxit*), *flects-it* (*flexit*), &c.

INFIN.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
c. <i>duc-ēre</i> (<i>to lead</i>)	<i>dux-it</i>	<i>dux-ērat</i>	<i>dux-ērit</i> .
ct. <i>flect-ēre</i> (<i>to bend</i>)	<i>flex-it</i>	<i>flex-ērat</i>	<i>flex-ērit</i> .
g. <i>reg-ēre</i> (<i>to rule</i>)	<i>rex-it</i>	<i>rex-ērat</i>	<i>rex-ērit</i> .
qu. <i>coqu-ēre</i> (<i>to cook</i>)	<i>cox-it</i>	<i>cox-ērat</i>	<i>cox-ērit</i> .
h. <i>trah-ēre</i> (<i>to draw</i>)	<i>trax-it</i>	<i>trax-ērat</i>	<i>trax-ērit</i> .

(d) Roots ending in a *t* sound (as *t*, *d*): some drop the *t* sound, and some drop the *s*; as,

[1. These drop the *t* sound.]

INFIN.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
<i>claud-ēre</i> (<i>to close</i>)	<i>claus-it</i>	<i>claus-ērat</i>	<i>claus-ērit</i> .
<i>mitt-ēre</i> (<i>to send</i>)	<i>mis-it</i>	<i>mis-ērat</i>	<i>mis-ērit</i> .

[2. These drop the *s*.]

<i>defend-ēre</i> (<i>to defend</i>)	<i>defend-it</i>	<i>defend-ērat</i>	<i>defend-ērit</i>
<i>ed-ēre</i> (<i>to eat</i>)	<i>ed-it</i>	<i>ed-ērat</i>	<i>ed-ērit</i> .

127. The *plurals* of these tenses are formed regularly:

PERF.	PLUPERF. and FUT. PERF.
<i>Sing.</i> <i>changes</i> -it <i>into</i>	put <i>n</i> before the <i>t</i> : -črat. <i>becomes</i> -črit
<i>Plur.</i> -črunt or -čre	-črant . . . -črint.

QUESTIONS.

123. For what are the *three* terminations in some adjectives?
—124. (a) Of what declension are these endings? (*us*, *er*, and *um*, of the second decl.; *a* of the first decl.) Go through all the endings. How are some adjectives in *er* declined? [(b) Some lose the *e*, some keep the *e*? (Say note 20.)—125. How are adjectives *not* of *three* terminations declined? (Like the third decl.) What is the *neuter* form in the nom., acc., and voc. for those in *is*? (125 (a). viz. *e* in the sing. and *ia* in the plur.) What is the *neuter* form for comparatives in these cases? (125 (b). viz. *or* becomes *us* in the singular, and adds *a* for the plural; *is*, *meli-or*, *neut.*, *meli-us*; plur., *meli-or-es*, *neut.*, *meli-or-a*.)—126. How are the *perf.*, *pluperf.*, and *fut. perf.* tenses formed for the third conjugation? (They change the *insin.* -čre into -čit, -črat, -črit, in a very *irregular* manner.) What do they generally first *add* to the root? [s. 126 (a).] What do the *p* sounds become with *s*? [*ps* and *bs* = *ps*. 126 (b).] What do the *k* sounds or *h* become with *s*? [*cs*, *cis*, *gs*, *qus*, or *hs* = *x*. 126 (c).] What do the roots in a *t* sound? [Some drop the *t* sound, and some the *s*. 126 (d).] How are the *plurals* of these tenses formed? (Regularly: -čit becomes -črunt or -čre, and the others put *n* before the *t* of the singular.)

EXERCISE 10.

128.

Exercitus, G. -i, an army.	Sæpe, <i>adv.</i> often.
Fera, G. -a, wild-beast.	Præstans, G. -ntis, <i>adj.</i> excellent.
Antonius, G. Antoni-i, Anthony.	Cleopatra, G. a, Cleopatra.
Egyptus, G. Egypt-i, Egypt.	Uxor, G. uxoris, <i>f.</i> a wife.
Cunctatio, G. -onis, <i>f.</i> delay.	Velox, G. ūcis, <i>adj.</i> swift.
Oppidum, G. -idi, a town.	Impedimenta (plur.), G. -orum, baggage.
Epistola, G. a, a letter.	

Homo, G. <i>hominis</i> , a man or woman, mankind in general.	Duc-ēre, to lead (<i>ducere uxōrem</i> , is to lead a wife, to marry).
Festin-ēre, to hasten.	
Noc-ēre, to hurt.	Nub-ēre, to marry (<i>a man</i>), followed by a <i>datice</i> (properly to <i>teil</i> as a woman).
Trah-ēre, to draw.	
Depend-ēre, to depend.	
Scrib-ēre, to write.	

129. Example.

Annum Numa descriptis in decem menses.
The year Numa divided into ten months.

Eng. constr. [Numa divided the year into ten months.]

Cesar magnum exercitum duxit. Homo feris est praestantior. Antonius Cleopatram reginam (130) Egypti duxit-uxorem. Festinare nocet; nocet et cunctatio sepe. Veloce equi impedimenta traxerunt. Filius patre sapientior oppidum defenderat.

130. Two nouns together meaning the *same thing* are to be in the *same case*; this is called *apposition*; and the noun in apposition is *last*, unless it is the more *emphatic*. [The apposition noun expresses some descriptive *name* or *title* of the former noun.]

Anthony *had often lead* (his) army. The *swiftest horses had-drawn* the baggage of the enemy. Cleopatra, queen (130) of Egypt, loved Anthony, and Anthony *married* Cleopatra. The boy's father *wrote* a *longer letter than* (his) son. The *more-beautiful Cleopatra married* Anthony (*dat.*). The *fairest queen will-have-written* the *longest letter*.

LESSON 10.

PRONOUNS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

131. The *pronouns* for the *first* and *second* persons are

SINGULAR.						PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc. & Abl.</i>	<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>& Abl.</i>	
I. <i>Ego</i>	<i>mei</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>Nos</i>	<i>nostrum²¹</i> or <i>s</i>	<i>nobilis</i>		
<i>I</i>	<i>of me</i>	<i>to me</i>	<i>me, & by me</i>	<i>We, us</i>	<i>of us</i>	<i>to or by us</i>		
II. <i>Tu</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>te</i>	<i>Vos</i>	<i>vestrum</i> or <i>s</i>	<i>vobis</i>		
	<i>thou of you</i>	<i>to you</i>	<i>you or by</i>	<i>Xe or you</i>	<i>of you</i>	<i>to you</i>		
	<i>or you</i>		<i>you</i>					

(a) *Meus-meus-nicetur*, my, and *noster-nostra-nostrum*, our, are the adj. pron. of the first pers. *Tuus-tua-tuum*, thy, and *vester-vestra-vestrum*, your, are the adj. pron. of the second person.

(b) *Ego, nos, tu, vos*, and *se* have properly no genitives, making use of their possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster*, and *vester* for that purpose, which are declined like the adj. (63, note 13.)

132. The pronouns for the third person are *illo, is, and sui*: *illo* and *is* are thus declined:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Mas. he.</i>	<i>Fem. she.</i>	<i>Neut. it.</i>	<i>Mas. they.</i>	<i>Fem. they.</i>	<i>Neut. they.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <i>Ille</i>		<i>ill-a</i>	<i>ill-e</i>	<i>ill-a</i>	
	<i>Is</i>	<i>e-a</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>e-a</i>	<i>e-a</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>illius</i>		<i>ill-orum</i>	<i>ill-arum</i>	<i>ill-orum</i>
	<i>ejus (for eius)</i>		<i>e-orum</i>	<i>e-arum</i>	<i>e-orum</i>
<i>DAT.</i>	<i>illi</i>		<i>illis</i>		
	<i>ei</i>		<i>illis or eis</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ill-um</i>	<i>ill-am</i>	<i>ill-ud</i>	<i>ill-as</i>	<i>ill-a</i>
	<i>e-num</i>	<i>e-am</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>e-as</i>	<i>e-a</i>
<i>ABL.</i>	<i>ill-o</i>	<i>ill-ai</i>	<i>ill-o</i>	<i>as (as the dative.)</i>	
	<i>e-o</i>	<i>e-d</i>	<i>e-o</i>		

(*Ille* is more emphatic than *is*; and like *ille* decline *istc-a-ud*, that, and also *ipse*, which makes *ips-um* instead of *ipsud* in nom. and acc. neut.)

133. *Sui* has no *nom. case*, and is the same in both numbers; thus

SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>(none).</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Sui, of</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Sibi, to</i> <i>him, her, or it; or himself, her-</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Se, self, itself; themselves; his, its, &c.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Se, by</i> <i>self, itself; themselves; his, its, &c.</i>

[*Suus, sua, suum, his, hers, its, is* the adj. pronoun of the third person, and is declined like all adj. of three terminations.]

²¹ *Nostrum* and *vestrum* refer to the *noun*, the *subject* of discourse, and *nostri* and *vestri* to the *object*.—Zumpt.

134. *Sui* and *suus* are used when the pronoun refers to the *nom.* of the verb; a,

Lat. Joannes diligit Jacobum, et fratrem *suum*.

Eng. John loves James, and *his* brother.

Here *his brother* means the brother of John, the *nom.* to the verb; if *his* referred to *James* which is not the *nom.* it must be expressed by *cūs*:

John loves *his own* brother—fratrem *suum*.

John loves *James's* brother—*cūs* fratrem.

(*Suum* follows *fratrem*, by Rule 67.)

135. The *tenses* that have been already formed are for

NOT-COMPLETED ACTIONS.

COMPLETED ACTIONS.

Present.

Perfect.

Imperfect.

Pluperfect.

Future.

Future-perfect.

These are the tenses that form the **INDICATIVE mood** of verbs, which is used for simply *declaring* or *affirming* every action.

136. These tenses throughout all the conjugations, are

I.	II.	III.	IV.
Infin. -āre	-ēre	-ēre	-īre to love.
<i>Indicative.</i>			
Present -āt	-ēt	-īt	-īt } loves, is lov-
Plur. -ānt	-ēnt	-īnt	-īunt } ing, does love.
Imperf. -ābāt	-ēbāt	-ēbāt	-īēbāt } did love or
Plur. -ābānt	-ēbānt	-ēbānt	-īēbānt } was loving.
Future -ābīt	-ēbīt	-ēt	-īēt. } shall or will
Plur. -ābūnt	-ēbūnt	-ēnt	-īēnt } love.
Perfect -āv-īt	-u-īt	-īt	-īv-īt } loved or
Plur. -āv-ērunt [or -ēre]	-u-ērunt [or -ēre]	-ērunt or [ēre]	-īv-ērunt } have loved. [or -ēre]
Pluperf. -āv-ērāt	-u-ērāt	-ērāt	-īv-ērāt } had loved.
Plur. -āv-ērānt	-u-ērānt	-ērānt	-īv-ērānt } had loved.
Fut. Prof. -āv-ērīt	-u-ērīt	-ērīt	-īv-ērīt } shall or will
Plur. -āv-ērīnt	-u-ērīnt	-ērīnt	-īv-ērīnt } have loved, or beloved.

137. Adjectives in the *neuter* gender without a substantive, and expressing *part* of any quantity, require a *genitive*; as,

Eng. A little money.

Lat. *Paululum* *pecuniae* (a little of money).

Eng. Some time.

Lat. *Aliquid temporis* (something of time).

(These adjectives may be considered in the light of substantives of the *neuter* gender.)

QUESTIONS.

131. Go through the pronouns for the *first* and *second* person.—What are the *adj.* pronouns for the first and second persons? (*Meus* and *tuus*.)—132. What are the pronouns for the third person? (*Ille*, *is*, and *sui*.) Go through *ille* and *is*.—133. Go through *sui*. What are the *adjective* pronouns of the third person? (*Suus*; and *ille* and *is* are also used as adjectives.)—134. When are *sui* and *suus* used? What is the place of *suus*? (After its noun.)—135. What are the tenses for *not-completed* actions? What, for *completed*? What *mood* do they form? (The *indicative* mood.)—136. Go through these tenses for all the verbs.—137. What case do adjectives in the *neut.* gender without a substantive require? (*Genitive*)

EXERCISE 11.

138. *Neuter* adjectives followed by *genitives*.

Multum, much.

Minus, less.

Tantum, so much.

Hoc, this.

Quantum, how much.

Plus, more.

Nimium, too much.

Aliquid, some.

Aliquantum, very much.

Nihil, (not declined,) no, no-

Paululum, a little²².

thing.

Quid, what. (*Quid novi?* What

Plurimum, most.

news?)

Minimum, least.

The adverbs taking a *genitive* are,
 Parum, *little*²² satis, *enough* abundè, *plenty*.

Laus, G. laudis, <i>f.</i> praise.	Novus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> new.
Voluptas, G. -tatis, <i>f.</i> pleasure.	Veritas, G. -tatis, truth.
Malus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> evil, bad.	Filia, G. -æ, daughter.
Ignavus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> idle.	Amitt-ere, to lose.
Severitas, G. -tatis ²³ , severity.	Tribu-ere, to attribute.
Pecunia, G. -æ, money.	Vit-are, to avoid.
Frater, G. -atris, brother.	Cras, <i>adv.</i> to-morrow.

139. Example.

Homērus Nestōri tribuit tantum laudis.
Homer to-Nestor attributes so-much praise.

Eng. constr. [Homer attributes *so much praise* to Nestor.]

Croesus *multum* pecuniae habuit. Antonius *nimum* temporis Cleopatrā reginā Egypti amisit. *Quantum* voluptatis habebit? Rex fratre sapientior *multum* mali vitaverat. *Quid* novi? *Multum* laudis dabit mihi, tibi *paululum* pecuniae. Gloria *voluptate* est præstantior (110). Filia mea *multum temporis* amiserit. Ignavus puer novā in urbe cras dormiet. Pecuniam (98) *habere* (95) sapientius est (95) quam pecuniam (98) *amittere*.

The idle boy lost *more* time. Truth has *some* severity. The good queen attributes *much* praise to her (134) fair daughter (67). Anthony had lost *too-much* time with Cleopatra queen of Egypt. Caesar lost *no* time. The enemy will give us (*dat.*) *some* time. He sent to you *very-much* of his (134) money, and to me *a little* of his praise. *What news?*

²² *A little* opposed to "not more" or "some," is *paululum*; *little* opposed to *much* is *parum*; thus

A little money,
Paululum pecunia.

Little money,
Parum pecunia.

²³ Nouns in *tas* make the English in *ty*: *veritas, verity*; *severitas, severity*.

LESSON 11.

FIRST AND SECOND PERSONS OF VERBS.

140. The three persons of verbs end in both numbers; in

SINGULAR.

1st pers.	2nd pers.	3rd pers.	1.	2.	3.
-o, -m, -i,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt.

(a) Conj. I.—*Pres.*, *fut.*, and *fut. perf.*, change *at* and *it* of the third person of each tense into *o*; as,

PRESENT.	FUT.	FUT. PERF.
3rd pers. am-at	am-āb-it	am-āvēr-it
1st pers. am-o	am-āb-o	am-āvēr-o

(b) Conj. II.—*Present* changes third person *et* into *eo*.

3rd pers. mon-et	1st pers. mon-eo
------------------	------------------

Fut. and *fut. perf.*, as in *first conj.*, viz., change *it* into *o*.

I. conj. 3rd pers. am-āb-it	1st pers. am-āb-o
-----------------------------	-------------------

II. conj. mon-āb-it	mon-āb-o
---------------------	----------

(c) Conj. III. & IV.—*Present tense* change *-it* of the III. conj. into *o*.

3rd pers. reg-it	1st pers. reg-o.
------------------	------------------

Change *-it* of the IV. conj. into *-io*.

• 3rd pers. aud-it	1st pers. aud-io.
--------------------	-------------------

Future tense change *-et* of both conj. into *am*.

III. conj. 3rd pers. reg-et	1st pers. reg-am.
-----------------------------	-------------------

IV. conj. 3rd pers. aud-it	1st pers. audl-am.
----------------------------	--------------------

Future perf. like the other conjugations.

(d) All the conjugations change *-it* of the *future perf.* into *-o*.

III. conj. 3rd pers. rex-ār-it	1st pers. rex-ār-o.
--------------------------------	---------------------

IV. conj. 3rd pers. aud-āvēr-it	1st pers. audivēr-o.
---------------------------------	----------------------

(e) **PERFECT TENSES** of all conjugations change *-it* of the third person into *-i* for the first person.

I. conj. 3rd pers. amāv-it	1st pers. amāv-i.
----------------------------	-------------------

II. conj. " monu-it	" monu-i.
---------------------	-----------

III. conj. " rex-it	" rex-i.
---------------------	----------

IV. conj. " audiv-it	" audiv-i.
----------------------	------------

(f) The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* tenses throughout, and all the other persons of the other tenses, follow the rule of changing the *t* of the third person into each of these endings:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
-m	-s	-t	-mus	-tis	-nt ²⁴ .
(g) * * Observe.—The PERFECT of all verbs for the second person <i>singular</i> and <i>plural</i> change <i>-it</i> into <i>-isti</i> for the singular, and <i>-istis</i> for the plural.					

141. MODEL OF ALL THE TENSES INDICATIVE.

(To be learnt by heart.)

I. CONJ.	II. CONJ.	III. CONJ.	IV. CONJ.
PRESENT.			
-o	-eo	-o	-io
-is	-es	-is	-is
am-āt	mon-ēt	reg-ēt	aud-ēt
-āmūs	-ēmūs	-īmūs	-īmūs
-ātīs	-ētīs	-ītīs	-ītīs
-ant	-ent	-unt	-iunt.
IMPERFECT.			
-ābam	-ēbam	-ēbam	-iēbam
-ābās	-ēbās	-ēbās	-iēbās
am-ābāt	mon-ēbāt	reg-ēbāt	aud-iēbāt
-ābāmūs	-ēbāmūs	-ēbāmūs	-iēbāmūs
-ābātīs	-ēbātīs	-ēbātīs	-iēbātīs
-ābānt	-ēbānt	-ēbānt	-iēbānt.
FUTURE.			
-ābo	-ēbo	-am	-iam
-ābīs	-ēbīs	-ēs	-iēs
am-ābīt	mon-ēbīt	reg-ēt	aud-ēt
-ābīmūs	-ēbīmūs	-ēmūs	-iēmūs
-ābītīs	-ēbītīs	-ētīs	-iētīs
-ābānt	-ēbānt	-ent	-ient.

²⁴ These personal endings are nearly *universal*; the *present* has lost its ending in *m*, though we find it in *sum* and *inquam*. The *perfect indicative* is without it; also the *futures* in *bo* and *ro*. This is not surprising; for we find that the practice of dropping *m* was much indulged in by Roman writers, and especially speakers: Cato, the censor, is noted for his omission of *m* in the *futures* of verbs in *o* and *io*, writing *dice* for *dicam*. (See *Quintilian*, *Inst. Or.* i. 7.) Moreover, the *figure eethlipis* shows the practice in poetry of cutting off *m* with its vowel.

PERFECT.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
-ñvī	-ñl	-l	-ñvī
-ñvislī	-uislī	-islī	-ñvislī
am-ñvīl	mon-ül	rex-yl	aud-yl
-ñvīmūs	-uimūs	-imūs	-ñvīmūs
-ñvislīs	-uislīs	-islīs	-ñvislīs
-ñvērunl	-uērunl	-ērunl	-ñvērunl
or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre.

PLUPERFECT.

-ñvēram	-uēram	-ēram	-ñvēram
-ñvērās	-uērās	-ērās	-ñvērās
am-ñvērāl	mon-ül	rex-yl	aud-yl
-ñvērāmūs	-uērāmūs	-ērāmūs	-ñvērāmūs
-ñvērālīs	-uērālīs	-ērālīs	-ñvērālīs
-ñvēranl	-uēranl	-ēranl	-ñvēranl.

FUTURE PERFECT.

-ñvēro	-uēro	-ēro	-ñvēro
-ñvēris	-uēris	-ēris	-ñvēris
am-ñvērīl	mon-ül	rex-yl	aud-yl
-ñvērimūs	-uērimūs	-ērimūs	-ñvērimūs
-ñvērīlīs	-uērīlīs	-ērīlīs	-ñvērīlīs
-ñvērinl	-uērinl	-ērinl	-ñvērinl.

Cf. The future perfect is usually placed in the subjunctive mood, but it is not a subjunctive tense. "It declares a future action, as absolutely perfected, before another action, likewise future, shall have been completed."—*Crambie*.

The future subjunctive is formed by the participle in *rus*, and part of *sum*: thus, *amaturus-sim*—*amaturus-sis*—*amaturus-sil*, &c., when the other tenses of the subjunctive will not act as substitutes.—*Zumpt*.

QUESTIONS.

140. What are the endings for the three persons in both numbers? How is the first person of the *pres.* and two *futures* formed in the *first conj.*? [(a) By changing *-at* or *-it* of the third person into *o*.] How is the first person of the *pres.* of the *second conj.* formed? [(b) By changing *-et* into *-eo*.] How are the first persons of the two *futures* formed? (Like in the *first conj.*, by changing *-it* into *o*.) How do the *ii.* and *iv.* *conj.*

form the first person present tense? [(c) Change *-it* into *-o* for the *iii. conj.*, and into *-io* for the *iv. conj.*] How is the first person of the first *future* formed? (By changing *-et* of *both* conjugations into *-am*.) How is the *future perfect* of all the conjugations formed in the first person? [(d) All verbs change *-it* into *-o.*] How is the first person in the *perfect tense* of verbs formed? [(e) All change *-it* into *-i.*] How are the *second persons* sing. and plur. of the *perfect* formed? [(f) All verbs change *-it* into *-isti* for the singular, and into *-istis* for the plural.] How do the *imperfect* and *pluperfect* form their several persons? [(f) Change *t* of the third person into these several endings:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>-m</i>	<i>-s</i>	<i>(-t)</i>	<i>-mus</i>	<i>-tis</i>	<i>-nti.</i>

How do the other tenses form their remaining persons *singular* and *plural*? [(g) According to the general table above.]—141. Go through the whole of the forms.

EXERCISE 12.

142.

Vicinus- <i>a-um</i> , neighbouring.	Natio, G. nationis, <i>f.</i> nation.
Conditio, G.- <i>onis</i> , <i>f.</i> condition.	Miles, G. <i>militis</i> , <i>m.</i> , soldier.
Pretium, G.- <i>i</i> , price, sum of money.	Mensis, G. <i>mensis</i> , a month.
Utilis, <i>m.</i> & <i>f.</i> <i>utile</i> , <i>neut.</i> , useful. (Compared regularly, 104, <i>a.</i>)	Decem, <i>undeclined</i> , ten.
Miser- <i>era-erum</i> , adj., misera- ble.	Invit- <i>äre</i> , to invite.
	Describ- <i>äre</i> , (126, <i>b</i>) to divide.
	Dimitt- <i>äre</i> , (126, <i>d</i>) to dismiss.
	Amitt- <i>äre</i> , (126, <i>d</i>) to lose.
	In, prep. <i>in</i> (with abl.); <i>into</i> (with acc.)

(a) The nom. of pronouns is seldom expressed, the termination of the verb being a sufficient mark of the person: but
 (b) When *emphasis* is required, or a *difference* in the persons, they must be expressed.

Tu dixisti nihil, nihil audivisti (52). Vicinas urbi nationes invitavimus. nostram conditionem miserimam putavimus. Ego misi viros, pueros tu misisti. Vos pretio milites dimiseratis. Nimum pecuniae non amiseris. Quid novi (138) audivisti? Non dicam. Cleopatram reginam Egypti duxeras-uxorem (128).

143. Example. Rem exposui.
The affair I have exposed.

I *have heard* nothing. You *thought* your-own (131),
 a) condition most-miserable. We had-invited the
 more-neighbouring nations to the city. We sent the
 most-useful boys, and you had sent the most-friendly
 men. Numa divided the year *into* ten months (129).
 I shall-have-written the letter. Knowledge is more-
 excellent *than* (omit *quam*) gold. We have lost *too-
 much* time (137).

LESSON 12.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRONOUN *Hic.*

144. The IMPERATIVE MOOD, which *commands*, has usually only the second person, which is in two forms; these are obtained in all the conjugations by dropping *-re* of the infinitive for the *first form*²⁵, and changing *-re* into *-to* for the *second form*; thus,

	I. conj.	II. conj.
<i>Infinitive</i>	am-āre	mon-ēre
<i>Imperative</i>	am-ā, am-āto	mon-ē, mon-ēto.
	III. conj.	IV. conj.
<i>Infinitive</i>	reg-ēre	aud-ēre
<i>Imperative</i>	reg-ē, reg-ēto	aud-ē, aud-ēto.

(In *reg-ēto*, the *e* is changed to *ē*.)

145. The plural is made by adding *-te* to the singular.

²⁵ *Dico, duco, facio, sero*, make their imperatives by dropping the whole of the infinitive ending (*ēre*), as *dic, duc, fac, ser.*

	I.	II.
<i>Singular</i>	amā amāto	monē monēto
<i>Plural</i>	amū-īē amātō-īē	monē-īē monētō-īē

	III.	IV.
<i>Singular</i>	regē regēto	audī audīto
<i>Plural</i>	regī-īē regitō-īē	audi-te auditō-īē

[The other persons are supplied by the present *subjunctive*²⁶.]

146. For the third person *sing.* and *plur.* the *present subjunctive* is generally used ; but there is another form made by adding *o* to the third persons *singular* and *plural* of the present indicative ; thus,

I.	II.	III.	IV.
<i>Sing.</i> amāto	monēto	regēto	audīto "
<i>Plur.</i> amanto	monento	regunto	audiunto.

147. " *Not* " with imperatives is always to be expressed by " *ne*," and " *nor* " by " *nevo*."

To all imperatives allot
A " *ne* " whenever there 's a " *not* ."
Whenever " *nor* " occurs, employ
A " *nevo*," to be right, my boy.

148. (a) The pronoun *Hic*, " *this*," is thus declined.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	hic	hac	hoc	Nom.	hi	hæ
Gen.	hujus	(<i>m. f. n.</i>)		Gen.	horum	harum
Dat.	huius	(<i>m. f. n.</i>)		Dat.	} his	(<i>m. f. n.</i>)
Abl.	hoc	hac	hoc	Abl.		
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	Acc.	hos	has

(b) *Hic, this*, in contrasted notions with *ille, that*, denotes " *the latter*," " *the nearer* ;" and *ille* denotes the more remote, " *the former*."

²⁶ The *present subjunctive* is always used as a softened imperative to express a *wish, request, precept*, or with " *ne*," to express a *prohibition*.

²⁷ This form is also of the second person ; and the second forms are only used when solemnity of speech is required.

149. *Iste* and *is* hold a middle place. *Iste* generally has reference to the person addressed, and is always used when *contempt* or *indignation* is signified: *Is* does not denote place, but refers to something mentioned or to be defined by the *relative*; and is always the pronoun preceding the relative *qui*, *que*, *quod*.

150. Nouns denoting the *point* of time, *when*, must be in the *ablative* (without a preposition); *duration* or *extent* of time, *how long*, in the *accusative* (without a prep.)²¹; as,

Abl. { *Venit tertiā horā.*
 { *He came at three o'clock.*
Acc. { *Mansit paucos dies.*
 { *He stayed a few days.*

151. (a) Names of towns and the place *where* must be in the *genitive* for *singulars* of the first and second declensions.

(b) *Plural* nouns, and all other declensions, must be in the *ablative*; as,

Romæ, consules; *Athenis*, archontes; *Carthagine*
At Romæ, consuls; *at Athenæ*, archons; *at Carthage*
suffetes quotannis creabantur.
suffetes were yearly created.

(c) After verbs of motion, the *accusative* must be used: before *towns* or small islands omit the preposition; before *countries* put *in* or *ad*.

Without { *Venit Romam.* | With { *Fugit in Asiam.*
 prep. { *He came to Rome.* | prep. { *He fled to Asia.*

152. The place *from* or *whence* must be in the *ablative*; as,

<i>Corintho</i>	<i>venit</i>	<i>Romam</i>
<i>From-Corinth</i>	<i>he-came</i>	<i>to-Rome.</i>

²¹ The *acc.* with *in* expresses the *point* or *duration* of time *for* or *against*; with *ad*, the time *at* which anything is done.

QUESTIONS.

144. What does the imperative mood? (Command.) What are its persons? (Only the second.) How is it formed? (By dropping *-re* of the Infinitive.) How is the plural formed? (145. By adding *-te* to the singular.) How are the other persons supplied? (By the present subjunctive.)—146. How is “*not*” expressed with the imperative?—147. Decline *hic*.—148. What is the difference between *hic* and *ille*?—149. What is the difference between *iste* and *is*? (*Iste* refers to the person addressed; *is* refers to something mentioned, or to be defined.)—150. In what case is time *when* put? (Ablative.) how long? (Accusative.)—151. In what case is the place *where*? ([a] In the gen. singulars of the first and second declensions; [b] plurals and other declensions in the ablative.) What case is used after verbs of motion? (Accusative [c] towns and small islands without the preposition; countries with a preposition, *in* or *ad*.)—152. In what case is the place *from* put? (Ablative.)

EXERCISE 13.

153.

Dictator, G. <i>-toris</i> , a dictator.	Primus- <i>a-um</i> , adj. first.
Finis, G. <i>-nis</i> , an end.	Idem, <i>eadem</i> , <i>idem</i> , the same, (declined like <i>is</i> (132).)
Percontator, G. <i>-toris</i> , an inquisitive person.	Athēnæ, G. <i>-arum</i> , pl. Athens, a city of Greece.
Posterus- <i>a-um</i> , adj. next.	Multus- <i>a-um</i> , adj. many.
Templum, G. <i>i</i> , a temple.	Vesper, G. <i>-ēris</i> , evening.
Jucundus- <i>a um</i> , adj. delightful.	Fuit, perf. of <i>sum</i> , was, has been.
Duo, du ^o , duo, pl. two. (Note ⁴⁸)	Fug-ēre, (fugi, <i>-itum</i> ,) to avoid, fly.
Impon-ēre, (-posui, -positum,) to put.	Aspic-ēre, to behold, see.
Red-ēre, to return.	Ædific-ēre, to build.
Man-ēre, (-nsi, -nsum,) to remain.	Neque—neque, neither—nor.

154. Example.

Priscus circum *Romæ* ædificavit, et ludos
Priscus the *circus* at *Rome* built, and games
 Romanos instituit.
Roman instituted.

[Priscus built the circus at Rome, and instituted the Roman games.]

Dictator *Rome* primus fuit Lartius. Finem *codem tempore* impone labori. Semper percontatorem fugito. Darius ex *Europā* in *Asiam* postero die redivit. Aspice *Athenis* templa. Corinthi multos annos ne manete. *Aliquid temporis* (137) manebo. *Asia* jueundior est *Europā*. (110, a.)

"*Nei*," accompanying an imperative mood, has *do* before it in English which is not expressed in Latin.

Numa built many temples *at-Rome*. Behold the *most delightful* cities of Asia. Regulus came from Rome to-Carthage *in-the-evening* (150). I fly from Europe into Asia (151, c) *the next day*. Behold-ye (143, a) the enemy *at this time*. *Do not* remain at-Corinth (151, a) two years (150). *Neither* build a circus at-Carthage *nor* a temple at-Rome; *the former* (148) is *in-Africa*, *the latter* is *in Europe*. I have no silver (137). Give to me (dat.) a little money (137). I will remain at Corinth *some time*.

LESSON 13.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND POTENTIAL MOODS.

PRONOUN *Qui*.

155. The Subjunctive and Potential moods are in *form* alike, but in *government* different.

- (a) The Subjunctive is always subjoined to another verb by some *conjunction*, or indefinite word; such as *ut*, *qui*, &c.
- (b) The Potential indicates power, and expresses some *contingency*²².

Subj. (a) *Veni, ut legerem.*
I came, that I might read (or to read).

²² The present potential expresses *may*, *can*, *will*, and *shall*. The imperfect potential, *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*.

Pot. (b) Legerem, si necesse esset

I would-read, if necessary it-were. [If it were necessary.]

In the former sentence *legerem* is subjunctive; in the latter, *legerem* is potential.

156. The *Subjunctive tenses* in the third person for *not-completed actions* have the *root* of the infinitive.

I. II. III. IV.
For **PRES.** add to the root, -*ēt* -*ēat* -*āt* -*īt*; as,

I. II. III. IV.
am-*ēt* mon-*ēat* reg-*āt* aud-*īat*.

For **IMPERF.** add *t* to the complete infinitive of each,
am-*āret* mon-*ēret* reg-*ēret* aud-*īret*.

Completed actions have the *root* of the *perfect indicative*.

For **PERF.** change perf. indic. -*it* into -*ērit*,
amav-*ērit* monu-*ērit* rex-*ērit* audiv-*ērit*.

For **PLUPERF.** change perf. indic. -*it* into -*isset*,
amav-*issēt* monu-*issēt* rex-*issēt* audiv-*isset*.

. The third *persons plural* are regular; that is, take *n* before the *t*.

157. The relative pronoun for *who*, *which*, and *that*, *whose*, and *whom*, is *qui*, which is thus declined:

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	qui	quæ	quod (<i>who, which, and that</i>)
Gen.	cu <i>ju</i> s		(<i>whose, or of which</i>)
Dat.	cui		(<i>to whom or which</i>)
Abl.	quo	quā	(<i>by whom or which</i>)
Acc.	quem	quam	quod (<i>whom, or which</i>).

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	qui	quæ	quæ
Gen.	quorūm	quarūm	quorūm
Dat.			
Abl.	quibus		
Acc.	quos	quas	quæ.

158. The relative (*qui*, *quæ*, *quod*,) must be of the same *gender*, *number*, and *person*, as the noun it refers to in the sentence going before it ²⁰.

[That is, it agrees in every thing, *but case*, with its antecedent.]

159. The case of the relative is governed by some word in its own sentence; if a pronoun attend it, it is *is, an, id.* (or some one of its cases.)

160. A *purpose* must be expressed by *ut* (that) with the *subjunctive*: this in English is usually expressed by the infinitive; as in the sentence 155 (a), which expresses a *purpose*.

Eng. I came *to-rend*. (Infin.)

Lat. I came that I-might-read. } (Subj.)
Veni ut legerem.

QUESTIONS.

155. What is the difference in the subjunctive and potential mood? What is the use of the subjunctive? (a.) What, of the potential? (b.)—156. What form do the subjunctive tenses take? (The present and imperfect take the root of the infinitive, and the perfect and pluperfect take the root of the perfect indicative.) Form the third persons singular of these tenses. How are the third persons plural formed?—157. Decline the relative *qui*, *qua*, *quod*.—158. What does the relative agree with? (Its antecedent, which is the noun going before it.) How? (In gender, number, and person.)—159. How does the relative get its case? (By government of some word in its own sentence.)—160. How is a *purpose* to be expressed? (By *ut* with the subjunctive.) How is it expressed in English? (By the infinitive)

Exercise 14.

161.

Is, *ea*, *id*, *he*, *she*, *it*.
Memor, *G. -ris*, mindful.

Homo, G. -*Inis*, man or woman
(one of the human species).

²⁹ The noun to which the relative refers sometimes follows it. When no other nominative in Latin or English is between the *rel.* and the *verb*, then the *rel.* is nom. to the *verb*.

Beneficium, G. -cii, kindness.	Miles, G. -itis, a soldier.
Dorm- <i>ire</i> , to sleep.	Oppidum, G. -idi, town.
Vid- <i>ere</i> (vidi, visum), to see.	Ven- <i>ire</i> , (veni, perf.) to come.
Ex- <i>ire</i> , (i, itum,) to depart.	Jub- <i>ere</i> , (jussi, perf.) to order.
Certiorem facere, to inform (to make a man more certain).	

162. Example.

Hoc agit *ut* se *conserret*.
This he-does that himself he-may-preserve.
 [This he does to preserve himself.]

Eos amamus *qui* sint memores³¹ beneficii. Homo *qui* dormivit. Veni, *ut* Trojæ reginam *viderem*. Regem vidi, *qui* Romam venit. Puerum imperat, *ut* *exeat*. Venit (perf.) *ut me certiorem-faceret*. Aeneas reginam amavisset. Homines audiret. Regat milites. Moneo *ut* domum *exeas*. Milites ad regem venērunt, *ut* oppidum conservaret. Hoc ago, *ut* bene *dormiam*. Me jubet vespere venire Carthaginem (*jubeo* takes *acc.* and *infin.*; not *ut* and *subj.*).

163. The present subjunctive must follow the *present* and *future* tenses³². The *imperfect* subjunctive must follow the *past* tenses. (*Imperfect*, *perfect*, and *pluperfect*.)

“*Not*” with subjunctive present must be “*no* ;”
 With future perfect too ‘tis found to be.

I am come *to-see* (160) the king of Troy. He advises the boy *to-learn*. Caesar sent a soldier *to-see* the town. The king may-hear (those who are) *mindful* of a kindness. He should-sleep. I would-advise the queen *to-come* to Rome (151, c). He has *too much* money (137). He might hear *his* (134) son.

³¹ Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind govern a *genitive*.

³² There is no *future* in the *subjunctive*: what is usually placed there is an *indicative tense*; the *future* subjunctive is supplied by the participle in *-rus* and the *present* potential of *esse*: as, *amaturus sim*; *amaturus sis*; *amaturus sit*; &c. (See 141 &c.)

LESSON 14.

THE VERB *Esse*, TO BE.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

164. The tenses for *not-completed* actions (*pres.*, *imp.*, and *fut.*) of *esse* in the third persons *indicative* are,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>Present</i> ,	<i>est</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	<i>erat</i>	<i>was</i>
<i>Future</i> ,	<i>erit</i>	<i>will be</i>

(regular, with *n* before the *t.*)

165. The tenses for *completed* actions (*perf.*, *pluperf.*, and *fut. perf.*) are all formed from another root, *fu²³*, (Greek, φύω,) which affixes the usual endings; thus,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>Perfect</i> ,	<i>fuit</i>	<i>has been</i>
		<i>fu-ērunt</i> , or <i>fu-ēre.</i>
<i>Pluperf. cl.</i> , <i>fuerat</i>		<i>had been</i>
<i>Fut. perf.</i> , <i>fuerit</i>		<i>shall have been</i>

} (regular, *n* before *t.*)

²³ The root *fu-* is an ingredient in all active verbs for the tenses of the completed actions. (Perf., pluperf., fut. perf.) In the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations; thus,

<i>I have been to love.</i>	<i>I have been to advise.</i>	<i>I have been to hear.</i>
I. <i>amare-fui</i>	II. <i>monere-fui</i>	IV. <i>audire-fui.</i>
<i>ama-fui</i>	<i>mone-fui</i>	<i>audi-fui.</i>
<i>ama-ri</i>	<i>mon-ri</i>	<i>audi-ri.</i>
<i>ama-fueram</i>	<i>mono-fueram</i>	<i>audi-fueram.</i>
<i>ama-teram</i>	<i>mon-teram</i>	<i>audi-teram.</i>
also,		
<i>ama-fuero</i>	<i>mone-fuero</i>	<i>audi-fuero.</i>
<i>ama-vero</i>	<i>mon-vero</i>	<i>audi-vero.</i>
<i>ama-fuerim</i>	<i>mono-fuerim</i>	<i>audi-fuerim.</i>
<i>ama-terim</i>	<i>mon-terim</i>	<i>audi-terim.</i>
<i>ama-fuissem</i>	<i>mono-fuissem</i>	<i>audi-fuissem.</i>
<i>ama-vissem</i>	<i>mon-vissem</i>	<i>audi-vissem.</i>
<i>ama-fuisse</i>	<i>mono-fuisse</i>	<i>audi-fuisse.</i>
<i>ama-visse</i>	<i>mon-visse</i>	<i>audi-visse.</i>

166. All parts of *esse* have the same case *after* them as *before* them; as,

Eng. *Cæsar* is emperor.

Lat. *Cæsar* est *imperator*.

167. *Unus*, *one*, and some other pronominal adjectives, are thus declined:

SINGULAR.

	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	<i>unus</i>		
Voc.	<i>une</i>	<i>undā</i>	<i>unum</i>
Gen.	<i>unūs</i>		
Dat.	<i>unī</i>		
Abil.	<i>uno</i>	<i>undā</i>	<i>uno</i>
Acc.	<i>unum</i>	<i>-am</i>	<i>-um</i> .

The *plural* is declined like other adjectives of *three* terminations.

[*Unus* has a *plural* when joined to plurals expressing individuals as *one* aggregate, and with nouns having *no singular*.]

168. Like *unus*, go through *alius*³⁴, *ullus*,

Alter (*alterius*), *uter*,

*Uterlibet*³⁵, *uterque*, *-vis*, and *nullus*,

With *totus*, *solus*, *neuter*³⁶.

³⁴ *Alius* makes *aliud* in the *neut. gen. sing.*

³⁵ In these compounds of *uter*,—*uterlibet*, *uterque*, *uteris*, the *-libet*, *-que*, and *-vis* are unchanged.

³⁶ This list of adjective pronouns will be useful.—Note, those in *-er* express *one of two*.

Quis	{	which (of many).
Uter		whether or which (of two).
Unus	{	one (of many).
Alter		one (of two).
Nullus	{	none (of many).
Neuter		neither (of two).
Quilibet or quivis	{	any (of many).
Quisquam or ullus		either (of two).
Uterlibet or utervis	{	every one (of many).
Quisque		each (of two).
Uterque	{	whichever
Quisquis or quicunque		whosoever } (of many).
Utercunque		whethersoever (of two).

QUESTIONS.

164. What are the tenses for the *not-completed* actions of *esse* in the third person?—165. What are the tenses for the *completed* actions of *esse* in the third person?—166. What cases follow the parts of *esse*?—168. Decline *unus*, one.—168. What words are declined like *unus*? What does *alius* make in the neut. gen. sing.? (*Aliud.*) Are the endings in the compounds of *uter*, namely, *-libet*, *-que*, and *-vis*, declined? (No.)

EXERCISE: 15.

169. *Mora*, G. *mora*, delay.

Dux, G. *ducis*, a general (inferior to *imperator*).

Ille, *illa*, *illud*, pr. he, she, it.

Ebrietas, G. *ebrietatis*, f. drunkenness.

Insania, G. *insanias*, madness.

Usus, G. *usus*, use.

Præceptor, G. *præceptoris*, teacher.

Beatus, *beata*, *beatum*, adj. happy.

Mens, G. *mentis*, f. mind (intellect).

Animus, G. *animi*, m. mind (sentiments, passions).

Potestas, G. *potestatis*, f. power.

Nullus, *nulla*, *nullum*, pr. no one.

Alius, *alia*, *aliud*, pr. one another (one of many).
(*alius*—*alius*, one—another.)

Alter, *altera*, *alterum*, pr. another (one of two).
(*alter*—*alter*, one—the other.)

Nunc, } conj. now, at this present time.
Jam, } conj. but (denotes *transition, change of subject*;
autem, but, denotes *addition, moreover, too*).

Fulgere, (*fusci*) to shine.

170. Example.

Mens sapientis semper erit tranquilla.
The-mind of-a-wise-man alicays will be tranquil.

Est Deus. *Jam mora est.* *Dux ille erat.* *Ebrietas est insania.* *Usus est præceptor.* *Sapiens erit semper beatus.* *Illa regina fuerat.* *Unus erit, in quo fulgeat³⁷ virtus.* *Homines utilissimi fuerunt.* *Quid*

³⁷ *Unus* or *solus* joined with *qui*,
Require subjunctive, by-the-by.

novi? (138.) Aliquid temporis (137) est. *Potestas fuerit. Fuit Romæ.*

171. When only one nominative is expressed with *est*, it may often be taken after the verb, and the verb *est*, &c., may be rendered *there is*; *there was*; &c.: as,

Est Deus—there is a God.

Wise men *are* always happy. She *was* a queen most-beautiful. *There-is* a God. *There-is* no-one now. *There-was* one. *There-will-be* another (of many). It is *too-much* money (137). The boys *are* good now, but *have been* bad. *They-will-be* useful soldiers, who (158, 159) came *to-Rome* (151, c). He comes *to-see* the queen (160).

LESSON 15.

SUBJUNCTIVE OF *Esse.*

IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES.

172. The *present* and *imperfect* tenses subjunctive of *sum* are in the third person singular,

Sing. *Plural.*

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Sit,</i>	it may or can be,	take <i>n</i> be-
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Esset, or</i>		

Foret, *be,* *fore the t.*

173. The *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses are formed from the root *fu-* as in the indicative;

Sing. *Plural.*

<i>Perf.</i> 3 pers. <i>Fuerit,</i>	it should have been,	taken <i>n</i> be-
<i>Plup.</i> „ <i>Fuissest,</i>	it would have been,	

174. (a) Certain *adjectives* are of very irregular comparison, and must be learned by heart²⁸.

²⁸ When comparatives are used without another subject to be compared with they are rendered in English by *too* or *somewhat* for the

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<i>Bonus, good</i>	<i>melior, better</i>	<i>optimus, best</i>
<i>Malus, bad</i>	<i>pejor, worse</i>	<i>pessimus, worst</i>
<i>Magnus, great</i>	<i>major, greater</i>	<i>maximus, greatest</i>
<i>Parvus, little</i>	<i>minor, less</i>	<i>minimus, least</i>
<i>Multus³⁹, much</i>	<i>plus, more</i>	<i>plurimus, most</i>

(b) Adjectives in *-ius*, *-inus*, *-itus*, and *-orus*, are not compared.

We say *pius*, godly, *magis* *pius*, more godly; *maxime* or *talde* *pius*, most or very godly; employing the terms *magis* for the comparative, and *maxime* or *talde* for the superlative⁴⁰.

175. After the parts of the verb *to be* in English, the words *part*, *duty*, *mark*, *business*, *character*, are omitted, and the noun following takes the *genitive* as in English; as

<i>English.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
<i>It is the part of a king</i>	
<i>It is the mark of a king</i>	
<i>It is the business of a king</i>	
<i>It is the character of a king</i>	
<i>It is incumbent on a king</i>	
	<i>It is of a king.</i>
	<i>Est regis.</i>

There are other words employed in the same way; as, "it is the *lot* of;" "it is the *office* of;" "it is the *property* of;" "it belongs to;" &c., all which are followed by a *genitive*.

176. In translating the Latin, put one of the above English words before the *genitive*.

comparative, and *very* for the superlative; as *doctor*, too or somewhat learned; *doctissimus*, very learned.

³⁹ *Multus* followed by another adjective requires *et*, though not so in English; as

<i>English.</i>	Many great men.
<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Muli et magni viri.</i>
[Many and great men.]	

⁴⁰ Adjectives compounded with *-dicus*, *ficus*, *-vitus* (from *dico*, *facio*, *velo*) form their comparatives in *-entior*; and superlatives in *-entissimus*; as *malevolus*, *malevolentior*—*malevolentissimus*.

QUESTIONS.

172. Which are the *present* and *imperfect* tenses subjunctive, third persons, of *sum*?—173. From what root are the *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses of the subjunctive of *sum* derived? (From the root *su-*.) What are the *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses third persons?—174. (a) Repeat the adjectives having *irregular* comparison? (b) What adjectives are compared by *magis* and *maxime* or *valde*?—175. What words are omitted in turning English into Latin after the parts of the verb *to be*? Translate "*est regis*" in all the English ways.—176. What does *multus* require after it? (Note ²³.) What do *unus* and *solus* with *qui*, require? (Note ²⁷.)

EXERCISE 16.

177. *Sapiens*, G. *sapientis*, *adj.* wise.
Insipiens, G. *insipientis*, *adj.* foolish.
Liberi, G. *liberorum*, plu. children.
Error, G. *erroris*, m. error.
Judex, G. *judicis*, a judge.
Parens, G. *parentis*, (com. gender) a parent.
Par-ēre, *par-ui*, to obey (followed by a *dative*).
Put-āre, to think.
Persever-āre, to persevere.
Al-ēre, to nourish.
Imper-āre, to command or govern (foll. by a *dative*).

Est sui juris, he is his own master.

178. *Filia* *esset maxima* *regina*. *Plurimi* *sint boni*.
Filia *est* *matrem* *amare*. *Bonorum* *puerorum* *est* *magistris* *parēre* (177). *Fuissent optimi*. *Iste puer* *sit pessimus*. *Est sapientis* *putare*. *Est insipientis* *in errore* *perseverare*. *Optimi* *judicis* *est*. *Non esset* *judex*. *Minores* *sint molires*. *Majores* *in errore* *perseveraverunt*.

179. When *est* requires a *genitive*
 Then follows an *infinitive*.

Example.

Militum *est* *suo* *duci* *parēre*.
Of soldiers *it-is* *their leader* *to-obey*.

[It is the *duty* of soldiers to obey their leader.]

It is *the duty* of parents to-nourish (their) children. (He) may-be *the-best* judge. It is *the mark* of a wise-man not to persevere (179) in error. It is *the duty* of a Christian to be *very pious*. It is *the business* of a king to govern the people (*datire*). He is *his own master*. The daughter *would-have-been* very-beautiful (*superl.*). The boys should-have-been *better*. The children are *too learned*. (Note ¹¹.) He may-be *the-worst of-all* (*gen.*). There-is *little time* (137).

LESSON 16.

THE VERB *Esse* (continued).

(First and Second persons, and *Imperative*.)

180. The *first* and *second persons* of the *present tense* of *sum* apply the usual terminations irregularly, and must be learnt by heart ¹¹; they are,

¹¹ In the ancient form of this tense, according to Varro, (L.L. ix. 100.) the terminations seem to comply with the general rule of changing -*t* of the third person into

Singular.			Plural.		
1.	2.	(3.)	1.	2.	(3.)
- <i>m</i>	- <i>s</i>	(- <i>t</i>)	- <i>mus</i>	- <i>atis</i>	(- <i>nt</i>)

thus, with the aid of some vowel, we have

The old form from Varro.

Singular.		Singular.	
1. (e)sum	2. es (es)	1. esum	2. esii
3. est		est <i>l</i>	
Plural.		Plural.	
1. (e)ssumus	2. es-tis	1. esumus	2. es <i>titis</i>
3. (e)sunt		esunt.	

PRESENT TENSE—INDICATIVE.

Singular.

1. Sum, I <i>am</i>	1. <i>Sumus</i> , we <i>are</i>
2. Es, thou <i>art</i>	2. <i>Estis</i> , ye <i>are</i>
(3. Est, he <i>is</i>)	(3. <i>Sunt</i> , they <i>are</i>).

Plural.

181. The *first* and *second* persons of the other tenses of *sum* are formed by changing the *t* of the third person sing. of each tense into the endings; as in (140)

Singular.

1.	2.	3.
-m	-s	(-t)

(*Perf.* -*i*) (*Perf.* -*sti*)
(*Fut.* -*o*)

Plural.

1.	2.	3. ⁴²
-mus	-tis	(nt)

(*Perf.* -*stis*)

182. The IMPERATIVE of *sum* is formed in the regular way (by rules 145, 146) by dropping -*ss* (which = the -*re* of other verbs) of the infinitive for the

42 INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

1.	2.	3.
<i>Present.</i> Sum	es	(est)
<i>Imperf.</i> era- <i>m</i>	era- <i>s</i>	(era <i>t</i>)
<i>Future.</i> er- <i>o</i>	eris	(erit)

From root *fu-* (*φυω*).

<i>Perfect.</i> fui	fui <i>stis</i>	(fuit)
<i>Pluperf.</i> fueram	fueras	(fuerat)
<i>Fu. Prf.</i> fuero	fueris	(fuerit)

Plural.

1.	2.	3.
<i>Sumus</i>	<i>estis</i>	(<i>sunt</i>)
<i>era-mus</i>	<i>eratis</i>	(<i>erant</i>)
<i>eri-mus</i>	<i>eritis</i>	(<i>erunt</i>)

<i>fui-mus</i>	<i>fui<i>stis</i></i>	(<i>fuerunt</i>)
<i>fueramus</i>	<i>fuer<i>atis</i></i>	(<i>fuerant</i>)
<i>fuerimus</i>	<i>fuer<i>itis</i></i>	(<i>fuerint</i>)

POTENTIAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i> Sim	sit	(sit)
<i>Imperf.</i> essem	esses	(essem <i>t</i>)
or, forem	fores	(fore <i>t</i>)
<i>Perfect.</i> fuerim	fueris	(fuerit <i>t</i>)
<i>Pluperf.</i> fuisse <i>m</i>	fuisse <i>s</i>	(fuisse <i>t</i>)

<i>Simus</i>	<i>stis</i>	(<i>sint</i>)
<i>essemus</i>	<i>essetis</i>	(<i>essent</i>)
—*	—	(<i>forent</i>)
<i>fuerimus</i>	<i>fueritis</i>	(<i>fuerint</i>)
<i>fuisse<i>m</i></i>	<i>fuisse<i>tis</i></i>	(<i>fuisse<i>t</i></i>)

* The first and second persons plural of *forem* are found in no classic

first form; and changing it into *-to* for the second form; as from *esse* comes

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i> 2nd pers. <i>es esto</i>	<i>estis estoſtis</i>

Add *to* to the singular, to get the plural.

The third person has a form by adding *o* to the third person of the present indic.; the other persons are borrowed from the pres. subj.

183. When the pronouns *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, precede the words *duty, mark, business, &c.*, which follow *est*, they must be in the *neuter gender, nominative case*, and *not* in the genitive (by rule 175); as

<i>ENGLISH.</i>	<i>LATIN.</i>
It is <i>my duty</i> ,	<i>est meum.</i>
It is <i>thy duty</i> ,	<i>est tuum.</i>
It is <i>his duty</i> ,	<i>est suum.</i>
It is <i>our duty</i> ,	<i>est nostrum.</i>
It is <i>your duty</i> ,	<i>est vestrum.</i>

[The pronouns *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, agree with some such word as *officium* or *negotium* understood.]

QUESTIONS.

180. Go through the present tense of *sum*.—181. How are the first and second persons of the other tenses formed?—182. What is the imperative of *sum*?—183. Are the pronouns *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, coming before *mark, duty, &c.*, after *est* to be in the genitive? (No: in the *nominative neuter*; as, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*.)

EXERCISE 17.

184.

<i>Pars, G. partis, f. a part.</i>	<i>Iter, G. itineris, n. a journey.</i>
<i>Eques, G. equitis, a horseman, knight.</i>	<i>Improbus-a-um, adj. wicked.</i>

Pauper-era-erum, adj. poor.

Gubern- <i>are</i> , to govern.	Dic- <i>ere</i> , (dixi, etum,) to speak,
Leg- <i>ere</i> (legi, lectum), to read.	say.
Pun- <i>ire</i> , to punish.	Septem, undecl. seven.
Fac- <i>ere</i> (fecī, factum), to make.	

Id temporis, *at that time*, { are used *adverbially*, without any go-
Id aetatis, *at that age*, } vernment, for *ea tempore, eā aetate*.

Homo *es*. Ego *sum* Davus. *Sumus* optimi Romæ. *Tuum* *est* id facere. *Meum* *est* gubernare. Magna pars *fui*. Non *sum* equitum magister. Id *aetatis* rex *fui*sses. Veni Romam, *ut* reginam *viderem*. Veniet tertiâ horâ, *ut* regem *videat* Carthagine (151, b). *Septem annos* manebo. *Id temporis*. Non puer *eram*. *Esto* brevis. Superbe respondebat, et crudeliter imperabat.

185. Example.

Est *tuum* iter facere.
It is *your-duty* the journey to-make.
[*It is your duty to make the journey.*]

It is *our duty* to read, *yours* (52) to write. *You were good at that age*, we will-be *better* (174). *It is his business* to-punish the-wicked. (*plu.*) *It is my duty* to-speak. *It is our duty* to obey the king. (*dat.*) I came to-Carthage (151, c) at-that-time *to-see* (160. 163) Regulus ⁴³. *I shall-be* the poorest (104, b) (*man*), but *you have-been* the wisest. *Be ye wise*. He will-remain at Carthage (151, d) four days (150). *It is your duty* to hear, and *mine* to-speak. *Be good*.

LESSON 17.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRICE IN THE GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE.

186. The *infinitive* expresses the *condition* of actions, not *time*; its tenses are formed from the roots,—1st,

⁴³ Regillus, gen. Regulli, a Roman of great courage and exalted honour, but a martyr to Carthaginian vengeance.

of the *not-completed* actions; 2nd, of the *completed* actions.

187. The *present* and *imperfect* tenses are, in

I. CONJ.	II. CONJ.	III. CONJ.	IV. CONJ.
-āre	-ēre	-ēre	-īre

188. (a) The *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses are formed from the third person singular of the *perfect* tenses *indicative*, by changing *-it* into *-isse*; as,

I.	II.	III.	IV.	
Perf. ind.	amav- <i>it</i>	monu- <i>it</i>	rex- <i>it</i>	audiv- <i>it</i>
Perf. and pluperf. } infinitive. } amav- <i>isse</i> monu- <i>isse</i> rex- <i>isse</i> audiv- <i>isse</i> .				

(b) *Sūm* makes its *infinitive* irregular in the *present* and *imperfect*, which is *esse*, to be: the *perfect* and *pluperfect* are regular, *su-isse*, to have been.

189. (a) **ADJECTIVES**, when they express the *cost*, *price*, or *value*, are put in the *genitive*; as,

*A*Estimo te *magni*.

I value you *much*.

(b) **SUBSTANTIVES** expressing the *cost*, *price*, or *value*, are put in the *ablative*; as,

Vendidit patriam *auro*.

He-sold his country *for gold*.

190. These genitive *adjectives* are,

Magni, <i>at much</i> , or <i>a great</i>	Minoris, <i>at less</i> .
(price).	Minimi, <i>at the least</i> , or <i>very</i>

Permagni, <i>at very much</i> .	little.
---------------------------------	---------

Maximi, <i>at very much</i> .	Parvi, <i>at a little</i> (price).
-------------------------------	------------------------------------

Plurimi, <i>at the most</i> , or <i>very</i>	Pluris, <i>at more</i> , or <i>of more</i>
<i>much</i> .	<i>value</i> .

Tanti—quanti, *so much—as*.

Tanti⁴⁴, *so much . . . quanti⁴⁴, how much*.

⁴⁴ And their compounds, *tantidem*, *just so much*; *quantisvis*, *quantilibet*, *for as much as you please*; *quanticunque*, *for how much soever*.

Also these *genitives* may be added,

Pendere	}	nihili,	to reckon at <i>nothing</i> .
Facere			
Ducere	}	flocci,	to reckon at a <i>lock of wool</i> .
Facere			
Æstimare	}	nauci,	to reckon at a <i>nutshell</i> .
Facere			
Habere	}	pili,	to reckon at a <i>hair</i> .
Facere			
teruncii,			to reckon at a <i>farthing</i> .
Facere	}	assis,	to reckon at a <i>penny</i> .
Æstimare			
Facere		hujus,	to reckon at <i>this</i> .
Non ducere		pensi,	to reckon at <i>no weight</i> .

191. After *know*, *think*, *feel*, *hear*, *say*, and *see*,
An *accusative* with its *infinitive* must be ;
The English “*that*,” beyond a doubt,
You must, in Latin, then *leave out*.

As, I hear (*that*) *he* is good.
 Audio *eum* esse bonum.

QUESTIONS.

-- 186. How are the tenses of the infinitive formed ?—187. What are the *present* and *imperfect* tenses infinitive ?—188. (a) How are the *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses infinitive formed ? What is the infinitive of *sum* ? (b)—189. In what case is the *price* or *value* of any thing put ? (If an adjective, in the *genitive* (a) ; if a substantive, in the *ablative*.) (b)—190. What are these *genitive* adjectives ? What verbs require an *accusative* with *infinitive* ? (191.)—What is to be done with the word “*that*?”

EXERCISE 18.

192. *Libra*, G. *-æ*, a pound.

Pecunia, G. *-æ*, money, property (“coined money” is *nummus*).

Conscientia, G. *-æ*, conscience.

Dolor, G. *-ōris*, *m.* pain.

Pretium, G. *pretii*, *n.* a price.

Talentum, G. *-nti*, *n.* a talent.

Sanguis, G. *sanguinis*, *m.* blood.

Vulnus, G. *vuln̄cris*, *n.* a wound.
 Pœni, G. *Pœnorūm*, *pl.* Carthaginians.
 Victoria, G. *-æ*, victory.
 Put-āre, to think or reckon.
 Doc-ēre, to teach.
 Stāre, (*perf.* *steti*,) to stand, cost.
 Em-ēre, (*perf.* *emi*,) to buy.

Magni aestimabat pecuniam. *Mea* mihi conscientia *pluris* est. *Minimi* putavit virtutem. *Dixit* se fuisse pauperem⁴³. *Scio* me ducere nihili virtutem. Epicurus dolorem nihili facit. *Quanti* me aestimas? *Parvi* te testimo. Demosthenes *talento* docuit. *Multo* sanguine et vulneribus ea Pœnis *victoria* stetit. *Fuisset* minoris dixisse. *Audivisse* regem. *Scit*, *reginam* *esso* pulcherrimam. *Quid* *nori* *hodie* *audivisti*?

Example.

Emit Canius *tanti* hortos *quanti*
 Bought Canius *for-as-much* the gardens *as*
 Pythius voluit.
 Pythius wished.

[*Canius* *bought* the gardens *for as much as* *Pythius* *wished.*]

He *reckons* *virtue* *at nothing*. That *victory* *cost* *much blood* (189, *b*). I shall *value* him *much*. You *do not value* me *for-as-much as* I *value* you. He *values* the man *at-a-great* (price). I *do not reckon* him *at a nutshell*. I *know that I am* (191) *poor*. He *said that the boy* was *idle* (166). *To-have-taught*: *to-have-said*: *to-have-been*. *What news?* (138.) I *bought* the book *for gold* (189, *b*). *It-cost two*⁴⁴ *pounds*. He *said that he bought it for a price*.

⁴³ In translating these accusatives and infinitives into English, put in "that" before the accusative; as, "er," that he; "me," that I.

⁴⁴ *Duo*, *two*, and *ambo*, *both*, are thus declined:

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom. } <i>Duo</i>	<i>duæ</i>	<i>duo</i> .	
Voc. } <i>Duo</i>			
Gen. } <i>Duorum</i>	<i>duarum</i>	<i>duorum</i> .	
Dat. } <i>Duobus</i>	<i>duabus</i>	<i>duobus</i> .	
Abl. } <i>Duobus</i>			
Acc. } <i>Duos</i>	<i>duas</i>	<i>duo</i> .	

LESSON 18.

SUPINES.

193. The *supines* of verbs end in *-tum* and *-tu*: *-tum* is *active*, expressing the action of the verb; *-tu* is *passive*, suffering the action.

194. They are formed in the first and fourth conjugations by changing *-re* of the *present infinitive* into *-tum* and *-tu*; as,

INFIN.	SUPINE ACTIVE.	SUPINE PASSIVE.
i. conj. am- <i>āre</i>	amā- <i>tum</i> (to love)	- <i>tu</i> (to be loved).
iv. conj. aud- <i>īre</i>	audi- <i>tum</i> (to hear)	- <i>tu</i> (to be heard).

195. In the second conjugation *ēre* of the *present infinitive* becomes *-itum* and *-itu*; as,

INFIN.	SUPINE ACTIVE.	SUPINE PASSIVE.
mon- <i>ēre</i>	mon- <i>itum</i> (to advise)	- <i>itu</i> (to be advised).

196. (a) In the third conjugation change *-ēre* of the *present infinitive* into *-tum* and *-tu*; but,

	INFIN.	SUP. ACT.	SUP. PASS.
<i>g</i>	reg- <i>ēre</i> (to rule)	rec- <i>tum</i>	rec- <i>tu</i> .
<i>h</i>	before <i>t</i> be- comes <i>s</i> ; as,	trah- <i>ēre</i> (to draw)	trac- <i>tum</i>
<i>qu</i>		coqu- <i>ēre</i> (to cook)	coc- <i>tum</i>
<i>b</i>	before <i>t</i> be- comes <i>p</i> ; as,	scrib- <i>ēre</i> (to write)	scrip- <i>tum</i>
<i>d</i>	changes <i>dt</i> into <i>s</i> ; as,	defend- <i>ēre</i> (to defend)	defen- <i>sum</i>

[Or change the *-si* of the *perfect* into *-tum* and *-tu*; as, *rec-si* (rexi), *rec-tum*, *rec-tu*; *scrip-si*, *scrip-tum*, *scrip-tu*.]

(3) Others change *-si* or *-di* of the *perfect* into *-sum* and *-su*; as,

divi-si	divi-sum	divi-su.
di-fen-di	defen-sum	defen-su ⁴⁷ .

197. The supine in *-um*⁴⁸ may be considered as a *substantive* of the *accusative* case governed by the preposition *ad* understood, and having an *active* signification⁴⁹.

It follows a verb expressing *motion*, and denotes the *purpose*.

198. The supine in *-u*⁵⁰ may be considered as a *substantive* in the *ablativo* case governed by the preposition *in* understood, and having generally a *passive* signification, though it is often used *actively*, particularly after "it is hard," "it is easy," "it is pleasant," &c.

It follows an *adjective*.

QUESTIONS.

193. What do the supines of verbs end in? (*-um* and *-u*.) Which is active? Which, passive?—194. How are they formed in the first and fourth conjugations?—195. How are they formed in the second conjugation?—196. (a) How are they formed in the third conjugation? What do some verbs change *-si* and *-di* of the perfect into? (196. (b) *-sum* and *-su*.)—197. What may the supine in *-um* be considered? What does it follow? What, denote?—198. What may the supine in *-u* be consi-

⁴⁷ The letter *r* before *-ere* is considered a vowel (*u*), and follows the general rule of changing *-ere* of the infin. into *-um* and *-tu*; as,

INFIN.	Supine in <i>-um</i> .	Supine in <i>-u</i> .
Solv-ere	solv-um	solv-tu.

Some verbs are very irregular: *figere*, *fixum*; *vincere*, *victum*; *stringere*, *strictum*; particularly where the liquids (l, m, n, r, and s) precede *-ere*, some of those in *-u* only following the general rule.

⁴⁸ Latin writers do not much use the *supine*, employing in preference the *gerund* with *ad*.

⁴⁹ The supine *-um* with the verb *iri* forms the future infinitive passive. See Lesson 27, *par.* 259.

dered? What does it follow? (An *adjective*.) What signification has it? (Sometimes *passive* and sometimes *active*; whichever suits the construction better.)

EXERCISE 19.

99. **Curio**, G. *Curion-is*, Curio, a Roman tribune of the people, and friend of Caesar.

Liber, G. *libr-i*, m. a book.

Gravis, *grav-e*, adj. grievous, heavy.

Fœdus-a-um, adj. disgraceful.

Salut-are, to salute.

Sc-ire, to know (from conviction, and as a matter of fact): *noscere*, *novi*, to know (by perception, have an idea of).

Rog-are, to ask for.

Dic-ere, to tell, say.

Per-ferre, (perf. *per-fuli*, irreg.) to endure.

Hodie, *adv. to-day*.

Non modo, *not only*—*sed etiam*, *but even*.

200. **Seito Curionem venisse me salutatum**. Mitterit *rogatum* libros eos, quos viderat. **Regina** venit te *auditum*. **Multa dictu** *gravia* *hodie* *perfulti*. **Res erat** non modo *visu* *sceda*, sed *etiam auditu*. **Jucundum** est *visu* atque *auditu*. *Est sapientis* multa discere. *Erat tuum* *rei-publice* legibus parere.

201. A *purpose* expressed in English by the infinitive may now be expressed *two* ways in Latin:

By rule 160, use *ut* with the *subjunctive*.

By rule 197, use the *supine* in *-um*.

A purpose. { *Veni ut regem salutarem* (160).
 { *Veni regem salutatum* (197).
I came the king to-salute.

Example.

Deos salutatum Pœni venerunt.

The gods *to-salute* the Carthaginians came.

[The Carthaginians came to salute the gods.]

He sent *to-ask-for* the book. The king came *to-hear* the queen. He heard *to-day* many (things) grievous *to-be-told*. The boy will learn many (things) not only

disgraceful *to-be-seen* but also *to-be-heard*. Ænens
came *in-sight* the fair queen of Carthage. He reckons
the book *at-a-great* (190) (price), virtue *at-nothing*.
I value him *so-much*.

LESSON 19.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT OR PAST IN *-tus*, AND FUTURE IN *-rus*.

202. The *perfect* or *past* participle in English ending in *-d*, *-n*, or *-t*, is formed in Latin by changing *-m* of the supine into *-s*; as,

English, learned; *Latin*, *doctus* (*supine*, *doctum*).

203. *Participles* govern the same cases as their verbs, and when expressing the meaning of their verbs in relation to *time* do not admit of comparison; as,

Puer *doctus* *linguam Latinam*.

A boy *taught* the language Latin.

[A boy *taught the Latin language*.]

204. Without relation to *time*, participles then govern the *genitive*, and take *comparison*.

Puer *doctus* *linguas Latinas*.

A boy *skilled in the language Latin*.

[A boy *skilled in the Latin language*.]

Comparison.

Puer *doctior* *linguae Latinæ*.

A boy *more-skilled in the Latin language*.

[The *participles* are then termed **PARTICIPIALS**.]

205. The *future* participle in *-rus* is formed by changing *-m* of the supine into *-rus*⁵⁰; as,

Supine, *doctu-m*, to teach,

Future in -rus, *doctu-rus*, about-to-teach.

⁵⁰ The future in *-rus* is declined like *bonus*, but has no *gen. plur.* (*futurorum* and *futurarum* excepted.)

206. (a) This *future participle* also expresses a purpose, and is used with *esse* to form the *infinitive future*, agreeing with the noun or pronoun preceding⁵¹; as,

Eng. He promised *to come*.

Lat. Promisit se *venturum esse*.

[*He promised that he would come.*]

[Here *venturum* is the *fut. partic.* agreeing with *se* in the acc. case sing. mas.]

(b) The infinitive *future* of *sum* is *foro*, or *furustum esse*, to be about to be.

207. All the *participles* in *-us* are declined like *bonus-a-um* (63), and agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case.

QUESTIONS.

202. What does the *perfect* or *past* participle end in in English? How is it formed in Latin?—203. What do participles govern? Do they admit of *comparison*?—204. When do they admit of comparison, and what do they then govern?—205. How is the *future participle* in *-rus* formed?—206. (a) What

⁵¹ The participle of the future in *-rus* with *sum*, and its various tenses, is used to denote that a person "has a mind to do," or, "is upon the point of doing" something. This, conjugated throughout, is termed the *periphrastic conjugation*; thus,

Present, {	Scripturus sum,	<i>I am about to write, or meditate writing.</i>
	Tu scripturus es,	<i>Thou art about to write.</i>
	&c.	&c.

Imperf.	Ego scripturus eram,	<i>I was about to write.</i>
	Tu scripturus eras,	<i>Thou wast about to write.</i>
	&c.	&c.

Perfect,	Scripturus fui,	<i>I have been about to write.</i>
	&c.	&c.

Pluperf.	Scripturus fueram,	<i>I had been about to write.</i>
	&c.	&c.

Future,	Scripturus ero,	<i>I shall be about to write.</i>
	&c.	&c.

The verb *sum* retains its own force in each tense.

*⁵² The future in *-rus* is not found with *furo*.

does the *future participle* sometimes express? How is it used with *acc.*? What is the *future infinitive* of *sum*? (b)—207. How are all the participles in *-us* declined? With what do they agree? (With their *nouns* in gender, number, and case.)

EXERCISE 20.

195. *Jupiter*, G. *Jovis* (and other cases regular from *gen.*), the chief of the gods.

Commeatus, G. *-is*, provisions.

Equus, G. *equ-i*, a horse.

Ludus, G. *-i*, a game.

Patris, G. *-is*, country.

Par-are, to procure, prepare.

Em-are, (em-*i*, em-*tum* and emp-*tum*,) to buy.

Spec-are, to behold, see.

Revoc-are, to recal.

Phrase. *Paucis his diebus*, a few days ago.

[(a) Length of time *before* the present moment is expressed by *abhinc* with the *acc.* for duration of time; and with *ab!* for *point of time*.]

209. *Moritus*; *auditus*: *venit recturus*. Misit homines *commeatus paraturos*. *Paucis his diebus* *veni equum cmturus*. *Veniam ludos spectaturus*.

Example.

Alexander ad Jovem Hammoneū pergit consulturus
Alexander to Jupiter Hammon goes to consult
de origine suā.
about origin his (his origin).

210. A *purpose* can now be expressed in Latin *three* different ways,

By rule 160, use *ut* with the *subjunctive*.

By rule 197, use the supine in *-um*.

By rule 206, use the future part. in *-rus*.

As, *Veni ut regem salutarem* (160).

Veni regem salutatum (197).

Veni regem salutaturus (206).

[*I came to salute the king.*]

Recalled to defend (sup. 197) (his) country. Advised *to-come* (160) a few-days-ago. *About-to-see* the games. *About-to-procure* provisions. Sent to-Rome (151, c). *About-to-hear*. It is *the duty* (175) of a good boy to learn. It is *the property* of a wise (man) to think. He values the book *at a very great* price (190). He has *less* (138) pleasure at-Rome *than* (*quam*) Balbus.

LESSON 20.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, AND FUTURE IN *-dus*.

Ablative absolute.

211. The PARTICIPLE of the *present tense*, which in English ends in *-ing*, in Latin ends in *-ans* or *ens*.

212. (a) The first conjugation changes *-āre* of the infinitive into *-ans*; as,

i. *am-āre*, to love; *part. pres.* *am-ans*, loving.

(b) The second and third conjugations change *-ēre* and *ēre* into *ens*, as,

ii. *mon-ēre*, to advise *part. pres.* *mon-ens*, advising

iii. *reg-ēre*, to rule *part. pres.* *reg-ens*, ruling.

(c) The fourth conjugation changes *-īre* into *-iens*, as,

iv. *aud-īre*, to hear *part. pres.* *aud-iens*, hearing.

Or thus,

i. <i>am-āre</i> , to love	<i>am-ans</i> , loving
----------------------------	------------------------

ii. <i>mon-ēre</i> , to advise	<i>mon-ens</i> , advising
--------------------------------	---------------------------

iii. <i>reg-ēre</i> , to rule	<i>reg-ens</i> , ruling
-------------------------------	-------------------------

iv. <i>aud-īre</i> , to hear	<i>aud-iens</i> , hearing.
------------------------------	----------------------------

213. (a) The *present participle* is declined like nouns of the third declension, and makes the genitive in *-tis*, and the abl. in *e*; as,

Nom. *am-ans*, G. *aman-tis*

mon-ens, G. *monen-tis*, &c.

(b) Like the *past participle*, the *present part.* governs the case of its verb, and admits not of *comparison*; when it has no reference to *time*, it governs the *genitivo*; as,

Amans virtutem.
One now loving virtue.

Amans virtutis.
A lover of virtue.

214. (a) The *participle* in *-dus*, called the *future* in *-dus*, has a *passive* signification, and is formed by changing *-s* of the *present participle* into *-dus*¹²; as,

Part. pres.

Future in -dus.

i. amans, loving	aman-dus, to be loved
ii. monens, advising	monen-dus, to be advised
iii. regens, ruling	regen-dus, to be ruled
iv. audiens, hearing	audien-dus, to be heard.

[(b) It is used in the *now.* to express *duty* or *necessity*; likewise after *dare*, *mittere*, and such verbs it expresses passively a *purpose*.]

215. The *participle* in *-dis*, like those in *-tus* and *-rus*, are declined like *bonus-a-um*, and agree with their nouns in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

216. When a noun and a participle in agreement

³² In the 3rd and 4th conjugations, with also the deponents, there is another form in *-undus* as well as *-endus*, particularly when *-i* precedes; as, *faciundus*.

This is the usual form of *polior* (*poliundus*).

Some active and many deponent verbs have a form in *-bundus*, which is of like meaning with the present participle; as,

Moribund or moribundus

Errans or errabundus

Vag-ans or vagabundus

In most other verbs, however, it strengthens their meaning, as,
Gratulabundus, full of congratulation.

are independent of any other word in the sentence, they are put in the *ablative case*⁵³.

☞ This is called the *ablative absolute*; and is preceded in English by such words as *when*, *while*, *since*, *after that*; and often with *being* or *having*⁵⁴ before the participle; as,

*Imperante Augusto, natus-est Christus: imperante
Reigning Augustus, was born Christ: reigning
Tiberio, crucifixus.
Tiberius, was-crucified.*

[*When Augustus was-reigning, Christ was-born :
When Tiberius was-reigning, (he) was crucified.*]

QUESTIONS.

211. What does the present participle end in in English? (In -ing.) What, in Latin? (In -ans or -ens.)—212. How does the first conjugation form its *present participle*? (a) (Changes -āre into -ans.) How do the second and third conjugations form their *present participle*? (b) (They change -ere into -ens.) How does the fourth conjugation form its *present participle*? (c) (By changing -ire into -iens.)—213. How is the pres. part. *declined*? What is its *genitive*?—214. (a) What is the signification of the participle in -dus? (Passive.) How is it formed? (By changing -s of the pres. part. into -dus.) (b) When does it express *duty* or *necessity*? When, *a purpose*?—215. How are participles in -dus declined? How do they agree with their nouns? 216. When a *noun* and its *participle* are independent of any other

⁵³ Sometimes a *sentence* supplies the place of a noun or pronoun in the ablative; but in this case "eo" may be considered as understood.

⁵⁴ The English of the *passive participle* is "being;" of the deponent "having;" of the common verb, "having," or "being."

His dictis.

These (things) *being* said.

Haec locutas.

Having spoken these (things).

His adeptis.

These (things) *being* obtained.

Haec adeptus.

Having obtained these (things).

* * * When no *part.* is expressed in Latin, *existens*, implying *being*, is understood.

word in its sentence, in which case do they stand? (In the *ablative*.) What is this case called? (The *ablative absolute*⁵⁵.) By what words is it generally preceded in English? (By *when*, *whilst*, *since*, *after that*.)

EXERCISE 21.

217. Imperium, G. -i, command.

Consul, G. -lis, a consul

Decemviri, G. -rorum, *pl.* the decemvirs.

Plebis, G. plebis, *c.* the people.

Potestas, G. potestatis, *f.* power.

Arma, G. armorum, *pl.* arms.

Transfere, (tran-tuli, *perf.*; translatum, *sup.*) irreg. to transfer.

Concedere, (-ssi, -cessum,) to grant⁵⁶.

Cedere, (-sci, -cessum,) to yield up.

Petere, (pet-iri and pet-ii⁵⁷,) pet-ūlum, to request.

A, ab, abs, prep. from, by (governing the *ablative*; a before consonants—ab before vowels—abs before t and qu).

Phrase. *Natus* viginti annos, twenty years old. (Old applied to years of life is expressed by *natus* agreeing with the noun, and the time following in the *acc.*)

Imperio a consulibus ad decemviro *translato*, venit Romam. *Concessū* plebi *potestate* cives arma cessērunt: *patentibus militibus* annos viginti *natus* venit ad Italiam. *Armis amissis* rex fugit. *Liber* scribendus et legendus. *Amandus*. *Multa* sunt videnda.

218. Example.

Pythagoras, when Tarquin was reigning, into Italy

Pythagoras, Tarquinio regnante, in Italiam
eame.
venit.

⁵⁵ The most common use of the *ablative absolute* is for expressing time.—Zumpt.

⁵⁶ *Cedere* and *concedere* are of similar import, but *concedere* is the stronger term.

⁵⁷ In the 4th conj. -iri is often contracted before s; as, *audisti*, *audissem*, for *audieisti*, *audivissem*;—the v is sometimes also dropped; as, *audii*, *audieram*. But this is not common: *Petere* prefers *petui*.

The command being transferred from the decemvirs to the consuls, he came to⁵⁸ Italy (151, c). The king requesting, the citizens yielded-up their arms. The power being granted to the soldiers, he at thirty years old fled into Africa. When Augustus was reigning, Christ was (est) born. When Tiberius was reigning, Christ was crucified. A book to-be-read (215). Many (things) to-be-written. A king to-be-seen. What news? (137.) He values (it) at-very-little (190).

LESSON 21.

PARTICIPLE IN *-dus*.

219. The participle in *-dus* in agreement with nouns expresses the *continued passive state* of the noun⁵⁹; and so forms a kind of declension; thus, with *pax*, peace, *fem.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. *Pax petenda, a peace to-be-sought.*

Gen. *Pacis petendæ, of seeking a peace.*

Dat. *Paci petendæ, to or for seeking a peace.*

Abl. *Pace petendâ, in, with, from, by, seeking a peace.*

Acc. *Pacem petendam, a peace to be sought (or with ad, to seek a peace, or for seeking a peace).*

220. So in the *plural* with *libri*, books, masc. &c.

Nom. *Libri legendi, books to be read.*

Gen. *Librorum legendorum, of reading books.*

Dat. } *Libris legendis, { to, for, or in, with, from,*
Abl. } *by, reading books.*

Acc. *Libros legendos, books to be read (or with ad, to read books⁶⁰, or for reading books).*

⁵⁸ "to" after a verb of motion denotes the *acc.* See (151).

⁵⁹ The sense of *futurity* may sometimes be implied, but it is derived from the *connexion*, not from the participle itself.—Zumpt.

⁶⁰ This construction is peculiar to the participle in *-dus* of those verbs which govern the *accusative case*.

221. (a) The participle in *-dus* always implies *duty* or *necessity* when declined with the verb *sum*, and *then only*; therefore, to express *duty* or *necessity*, use this participle in *-dus*.

(b) The verb *sum* is in this construction rendered into English by “*is to be*”⁶¹, with the *noun* as *nom.*: or by “*must*,” or “*ought to*,” with the following *dative*⁶² as *nom.*; thus,

Lat. *Diligentia nobis est colenda.*

Eng. *Diligence by us is to-be-cultivated.*

or, *We must cultivate diligence.*

[*Nobis est colenda diligentia.*]

222. The participle in *-dus* expresses *necessity* with *sum*, either in *agreement*⁶³ with the subject; or in the *neuter gender*, with the subject in the *dative*, retaining the government of the verb.

A kind of circumlocution, or *periphrastic* conjugation may be thus formed:

Legendum est mihi, I must read.

Legendum est tibi, you must read.

Legendum est illi, he or she must read.

Legendum est nobis, we must read.

Legendum est vobis, you must read.

Legendum est illis, they must read.

Or, according to the Latin,—*it is to be* read by me,—*it is to be* read by you,—*it is to be* read by him, &c.; and so with the other tenses⁶⁴ of *sum*.

⁶¹ Though the English expression “*is to be*” denotes either *futurity* or *obligation*, the participle in *-dus* with the verb *sum* always expresses *necessity* or *duty*.—*Crombie*.

⁶² This *dative* may be a *noun* or *pronoun*.

⁶³ Or it may be conjugated in agreement with the *nom.* as the future in *-rus* in page 74 (note ⁶¹); thus,

Amandus (-a-nus) sum, I must or deserve to be loved.

Amandus es, &c. thou must be loved, &c.

Amandus erat, &c. &c.

Amandus fuit, &c. &c.

223. (a) If the expression is universal, implying *all*, *every body*, the pronoun may be omitted ; as,

Lat. *Legendum est, it is to be read.*

That is, *We* must read,

you must read,

every body must read.

(b) Likewise, when the *dative* may be understood from the context, it may be omitted.

QUESTIONS.

219. What does the participle in *-dus* in *agreement* with nouns express? Go through a declension of the participle in *-dus* in agreement with nouns in the singular, with *pax (fem.)*—

220. And in the plural with *libri (masc.)*—221. (a) When does the participle in *-dus* imply *duty* or *necessity*? How do you render *sum* into English with the noun as *nom.*? (b) How, when the *dative* is to be taken as *nom.*?—222. How does the participle in *-dus* express *necessity* with *sum* in relation to the subject? Go through a *periphrastic* conjugation in the present tense with this participle. Why is *legendum* in the neuter? (To agree with *it* or *the thing* understood.)—223. When is the pronoun omitted? (a) When may the *dative* be omitted? (b) (When the persons intended may be understood from the context.)

EXERCISE 22.

224. *Munus*, G. *munēris*, *n.* office, duty, gift.

Difficultas, G. *difficultatis*, *f.* difficulty.

Plato, G. *Platōnis*, *m.* Plato (a Greek philosopher).

Studiosus-a-um, adj. very fond.

Ignarus-a-um, adj. ignorant.

Oratio, G. *-onis*, *f.* language, speech.

Materies, G. *-iei*, *f.* material.

Turris, G. *-is*, *m.* a tower.

Permulti-a-a, adj. pl. very many.

Negligens, G. *-ntis*, adj. negligent.

Sustin-ēre, to support.

Cern-ēre, (crevi, cretum,) to perceive.

Fac-ēre, (pres. part. *faciens* ; perf. *fecī*, sup. *factum*,) to compose, make.

Pol-*ire*, to polish.
 Veh-*ere*, (vexi, vectum,) to carry.
 Adhib-*ere*, to show, exhibit.
 Elig-*ere*, to choose.

(On paragraphs 219, 220.)

Sustinendi muneric difficultatem cernit. Platonis audiendi studiosus est. Puer ignarus est faciendae ac policiendae orationis. Materies navibus et turribus faciendis (dat.) *vehebatur. Permulti in equis parandis magnam adhident curam, in amicis eligendis negligentes sunt. Cæsare duce* (216. Note 54 *₂*) *vice-runt milites.*

225. Example.

Romulum et Remum *urbis condendæ* cupido
 Romulus and Remus *of a city building* the desire
 cepit.
 seized.

[*The desire of building a city seized Romulus and Remus.*]

He-showed the greatest care in (*in*) supporting (his) office. The boy was very-fond of reading *Cicero*⁶⁴ (gen.). He brought the material for making the ships and towers from (*ab*) Italy⁶⁵. The king perceived the difficulty of procuring horses. He is very-fond of composing and polishing (his) language (gen.). Very-many show great negligence in choosing (their) friends. He is very fond of reading *Plato* and hearing *Cicero*.

LESSON 22.

NECESSITY OR DUTY (*continued*).

226. The *necessity* or *duty* may refer to *present* time, *past*, or *future*; this is effected by the tenses of *sum*; as

⁶⁴ Cicero, G. Ciceronis.

⁶⁵ Italia, G. Italiæ.

Present. *Dimicandum est*, it is to be fought.

Past. *Dimicandum erat* or *fuit*, it was or had to be fought.

Future. *Dimicandum erit*, it shall or will have to be fought.

EXERCISE 23.

227. *Lex*, G. *legis*, a law.

Respublica, G. *rei-publica*, f. the state.

(Nouns compounded of *two nominatives* are *both* declined; as *res*, a thing, and *publica*, public.)

Suspicio, G. *-onis*, f. suspicion.

Dignus-a-um, adj. worthy.

Studium, G. *-i*, study.

Juvenis, is, youth.

Jub-ēre, (jussi, jussum,) to order.

Suscip-ēre, (pres. part. *suscipiens*, *prf. suscepī*, *sup.-ptum*,) to undertake.

Vit-ēre, to avoid.

Dimic-ēre, to fight.

Proferre, (protuli, prolatum, proferendus,) to extend.

(On paragraphs 221—223.)

DUTY AND NECESSITY.

[How is the difference of *time* expressed by the participle in *-dus*? (226)]

Lex *jubet* ea quæ *facienda sunt*. *Respublica* *tibi est regenda*. *Suscipiendum est omnibus*. *Vitanda nobis est suspicio*. *Dignum nobis dicendum est*. *Legendum est illis*. *Audiendum est vobis*. *Quibuscum⁶⁸ mihi dimicandum erat*. *Studia juvenis (gen.) preferenda sunt*. *Cum rege nobis dimicandum erit*. *Pax mihi petenda est*. *Veni Romam paucis his diebus* (208).

⁶⁸ The preposition *cum*, with, joined with the monosyllables *me*, *te*, *se*, and with *nobis*, *vobis*, and *quibus*, is annexed to them as *one word*; *mecum*, *tecum*, &c.

228. Example.

Deum esse, nobis fatendum-est.
 A God that there is, by us it is to be confessed.
 [We must confess that there is a God.]

Suspicion *icas to be avoided* (223). You must fight with the king. We shall have to rule the state. All must undertake (it). With whom must I read? We ought to extend the studies of youth. They must write. You (pl.) must seek peace. All must hear: we must read. I came to see the king (express it three ways, 210). When Augustus *icas reigning*, Christ was-born (216). They reckon virtue *at-nothing* (190).

LESSON 23.

GERUNDS.

229. The *gerunds* express the action or state of the verb like a verbal substantive, and they may be considered as merely the *gen.*, *dat.*, *abl.*, and *acc.* cases neuter of the participle in *-dus*.

230. The *gerund* and the *participle in -dus* may be considered as convertible one into the other whenever the verb is transitive (that is, takes the *accusative*); thus

Lat. Sum cupidus scribendi epistolam, } gerund
Eng. I am desirous of writing a letter, } gerund

(here *scribendi* is a gerund, and governs the *accusative* *epistolam*); this, therefore, may be converted into the *participle in -dus* by making them agree in *gender* and *number*, and keeping to the case of the gerund; thus

Sum cupidus scribendus epistolam, } particip.
 I am desirous of writing a letter, } in -dus.

(Or, of a letter to be written.)

231. The *gerunds* with the aid of the infinitive *present* can be exhibited as a declinable noun of the *singular* number; thus

<i>Nom.</i>	} <i>Scribere, to write.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Scribendi, of writing.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Scribendo, to or for writing;—in, with,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>from, by, writing.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Scribendum, to write.</i> (the <i>acc.</i> gerund is always dependent on some preposition; usually <i>ad</i> , <i>to</i> , or <i>inter</i> , during, amidst.)

232. The gerunds are *three*, and end in

-di -do -dum;

and govern the cases of their verbs. (See paragraph 231.)

233. The gerund in *-di* is sometimes employed to express a *purpose* after *gratiā* or *causā*, (for the sake of,) as

Veni regem salutandi gratiā (or causā).

I came for the sake of saluting the king:

this may be converted into the participle in *-dus* in agreement with the noun governed by *ad*; as

Veni ad regem salutandum.
*I came to salute the king.*⁶⁷

QUESTIONS.

229. What do the gerunds express? What may the gerunds be considered? (As the *gen.*, *dat.*, or *abl.*, and *acc.* cases of the

⁶⁷ By these rules, in addition to 160, 197 and 206, a purpose can be expressed correctly *five* different ways; thus

Veni ut regem salutarem. (160)

Veni regem salutatum. (197)

Veni regem salutaturus. (206)

Veni regem salutandi causā (or gratiā). } (233)

Veni ad regem salutandum.

[*I came to salute the king.*]

participle in *-dus*.)—230. When may the *gerund* be converted into the participle in *-dus*? (Whenever the verb forming the gerund governs an *acc.* case.) What is the difference of construction in the gerund and the participle in *-dus*? (The gerund *governs* its noun, the participle in *-dus* *agrees* with its noun.)—231. Decline the gerund as a noun with the aid of the present infinitive. What case does the present infin. supply? (The *nom.*; sometimes the *acc.*) What is the *acc.* gerund, or gerund in *-dum*, always dependent upon? (Some preposition, generally *ad* or *inter*.) What does *ad* signify? (*To.*) and *inter*? (*During* or *amidst.*)—232. How many gerunds are there? (*Three.*) What do they end in?—233. How does the gerund in *-di* express a purpose?

EXERCISE 24.

234. *Alius—alius, one man—another.*

Charta, G. -a, f. paper.

Utilis, utile, adj. useful.

Idoneus-a-um, adj. fit.

Promptus-a-um, adj. ready.

Ignarus-a-um, adj. idle.

Leg-ere, to read.

Ed-ere, irr. to eat.

Al-ere, (alui, alitum and altum,) to nourish.

Ag-ere, (egi, actum,) to act, do.

Cogit-are, to think.

Male, adv. badly.

Platonem *audiendi* studiosus est. Milites *in equos parando* magnam adlibent curam. Studiosus est *legendi* *alius*, *alius scribendi*. *Charta utilis* est *scribendo*. Illud *idoneum* erat *edendo*. Pueri *ad audiendum* erunt *prompti*: *ignavi* sunt *inter docendum*. Homo *natus* est *ad intelligendum* et *agendum*. *Nihil agendo* homines male agere discunt. *Hominis mens discendo* alit et *cogitando*.

235. Example.

Avari homines non solum libidine

Covetous men not only with the passion

augendi cruciantur, sed etiam *amittendi* of acquiring are tormented, but also of losing metu with the fear.

[Covetous men are not only tormented with the passion of (for) acquiring, but also with the fear of losing.]

The best soldiers are fit for *fighting*: one man is very fond of *writing*; another, of *reading*. The men are *not only* ready to *hear*, but *also* to *act*. By *doing* something, men learn to *do well*⁶⁸. While *playing*⁶⁹, the boys are idle. We are ready to *understand*, and to *act*. Hear your master while *teaching*. It is fit for *eating*. It is a *mark of wisdom* (175) not to persevere in error. It is *your duty* (182) to learn well: it is *mine* to write well.

LESSON 24.

PASSIVE VERBS.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES.

236. All **PASSIVES**⁷⁰ of the *third person* singular or plural for *not-completed actions* are formed by adding *-ur* to the *third person active*; as,—

⁶⁸ Bend.

⁶⁹ Inter ludendum.

⁷⁰ *Passive verbs* are such as express the suffering of the action of the verb: therefore all active verbs followed by an *accusative* can be made passive, and that *accusative*, and no other word, must be the *nominative* to the passive verb; hence, if a verb does not govern an *accusative* in the active voice, it can have no passive, but is used *impersonally*; as,

Ille *dixit hoc.* } *Active, governing the accusative hoc.*
He said this. }

Hoc ab illo *dicitum-est.* } *Passive, hoc now being the nominative (and*
This by him was-said. } *the agent of the active in the ablative illo).*

Resisto *tibi.* } Here *resisto* governs a *dative* (not an *accusative*), and
I resist you. } therefore cannot be made *passive*. You must not,
to express the *suffering* of the action, say, *tu resistaris* (you are
resisted), but must make the verb *impersonal*, and say, *tibi resistis-
tur* (you are resisted).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
ACTIVE.	- <i>ist</i>	- <i>ant</i>	- <i>et</i>	- <i>it</i>
PASSIVE.	- <i>ist</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ant</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>et</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>it</i> <i>ür</i>

IMPERFECT.

ACTIVE.	- <i>ib</i> <i>at</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>ant</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>at</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>ant</i>
PASSIVE.	- <i>ib</i> <i>at</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>ant</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>at</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>ant</i> <i>ür</i>

PAST.

ACTIVE.	- <i>ib</i> <i>it</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>unt</i>	- <i>it</i>	- <i>it</i>
PASSIVE.	- <i>ib</i> <i>it</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>unt</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>it</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>unt</i> <i>ür</i>

POTENTIAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

ACTIVE.	- <i>ib</i> <i>it</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>unt</i>	- <i>it</i>	- <i>it</i>
PASSIVE.	- <i>ib</i> <i>it</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>unt</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>it</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>unt</i> <i>ür</i>

PRESENT.

ACTIVE.	- <i>ib</i> <i>it</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>unt</i>	- <i>it</i>	- <i>it</i>
PASSIVE.	- <i>ib</i> <i>it</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>unt</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>it</i> <i>ür</i>	- <i>ib</i> <i>unt</i> <i>ür</i>

IMPERFECT.

237. (a) The agent of an *active* verb is expressed by the *ablative* in *passive* constructions.

(b) This ablative of the agent, if *living beings*, requires the preposition *a* or *ab*:

Domus *a* *circ* spoliabatur.
The house *by a citizen* was plundered.

(c) If the agent is *not a living being*, the preposition is *omitted*; as,

Domus *igne* cremabatur.
The house *by fire* was destroyed.

238. A noun expressing the *instrument* of an action is to be put in the *ablative* without a preposition; as,

Milites regem *gladiis* interfecērunt.
The soldiers the king *with swords* killed.

[*The soldiers killed the king with (their) swords.*]

239. (a) A noun expressing the *manner* of an action is to be put in the *ablative* case, with the preposition *cum* (*with*); as,

Puer *cum diligentia* discit.
The boy *with diligence* learns.

(b) When an adjective is joined with the noun governed by *cum*, *cum* must be placed *between* the adjective and substantive; as,

Puer maximā *cum diligentia* discit.
The boy *greatest with diligence* learns.

[*The boy learns with the greatest diligence.*]

QUESTIONS.

236. How are the third persons singular and plural of all the tenses for *not-completed actions* formed? (By adding *-ur* to the same persons of the active voice.) What are the tenses for *not-completed actions*? (Present, imperfect, and future.) Go through these passive forms in all the conjugations. 237. How is the agent of an active verb expressed in *passive* con-

structions? [(a) by the *ablative*.] If the agent is a *living being*, what does it require? [(b) The preposition *a* or *ab*.] If the agent is *not a living being*, is the preposition to be expressed? [(c) No.]—238. How is the *instrument* of an action expressed? (By an ablative *without a preposition*.)—239. How is the *maner* of an action expressed? [(a) by the *ablative*, with *cum*.] Where is the place for *cum*, when an adjective accompanies the noun? [(b) Usually *between* the adjective and the noun.]

EXERCISE 25.

240. Ignis, G. *ignis*, fire.
 Hyems, G. *-mis*, winter.
 Gladius, G. *-dii*, a sword.
 Corpus, G. *cörpör-is*, *n.* a body.
 Divitiae, G. *-iārum*, *pl.* riches.
 Usus, G. *-usus*, *m.* use.
 Vita, G. *vita*, *f.* life.
 Amicitia, G. *amiciti-a*, friendship.
 Tertius-*a-um*, *adj.* third.
 Lev-*are*, to lighten, lessen.
 Vulner-*are*, to wound.
 Sepel-*ire*, to bury.
 Expet-*ere*, to seek for.
 Exceptus-*a-um*, excepted.

Summus mons, the top of the mountain.

241. Many adjectives are used in *agreement* with nouns to express the relation of its parts, and where the English employ *two* nouns; thus, in *summus mons*, *summus* (*highest*) is the adjective in agreement with *mons*, answering to the English “*the top of*” so *imus mons*, means *the bottom of the mountain* (*the lowest mountain*), *medius mons*, the middle of the mountain⁷¹, &c.

⁷¹ These adjectives are,

Primus (*first*), medius (*middle*), ultimus (*last*), summus (*highest*),
beginning of, *middle of*, *end of*, *top of*,
 imus (*lowest*), interior (*more inward*), intimus (*most inward*),
bottom of, *interior of*, *inside of*,
 extremus (*last*), reliquus (*remaining*), universus (*entire*),
end of, *rest of*, *whole of*.

*Igne levatur hyems. Philosophia laudabitur a bonis. Tertiā horā magister equitum gladio vulnerabatur. Corpora civium a militibus in summo monte sepelientur. Domus ædificatur*¹². Nuncius mitteretur Romanum. Dicitur ad usus vitæ necessarios expetuntur. Diligentia ab omnibus laudatur. Nihil amicitia præstabilius est, excepta virtute. *Est sapientis diligentiam laudare. Venit, ut puerum videret.*

242. Example.

Omnes artes in veri investigatione
All arts in of truth the investigation
versantur.
are employed.

[*All arts are employed in the investigation of truth.*]

The king will be buried at Rome (151, a) by the
soldiers (239, b). The queen's messenger was wounded

¹² Domus ædificatur, *the house is building*: the English participle in -ing belongs to the *passive* as well as to the *active* voice, and requires a little attention in young scholars to know when to employ the passive or the active in turning into Latin. In the sentence *the house is building*, "is building" is passive; but in the sentence, *Caius is building*, "is building" is active: therefore in making Latin, enquire if the nominative is *acting*; if so, use the active verb; if the *nom.* is *suffering* the action, use the *passive* verb: as these *two* sentences exemplify;

Passive. { *The house is building.*
Domus ædificatur.

Active. { *Caius is building.*
Caius ædificat.

Again it may be observed, that when in passive constructions the English participle in -ing is employed to express an *incomplete* state of suffering, the Latins use a passive tense formed by *inflection*; but when the suffering is *completed*, and an English *past participle* is used, a *past participle* or compound tense is used in Latin; thus,

Passive with -ing.

<i>The house is building.</i>	Domus ædificatur.
<i>The house was building.</i>	Domus ædificabatur.

Passive with past part.

<i>The house is built.</i>	Domus est ædificata.
<i>The house was built.</i>	Domus erat ædificata.

by a sword. Diligence and philosophy are praised⁷³ by all. The winter will-be-lightened by fire. Soldiers should-be-sent to Rome (151, c) from Corinth to-see (160) the games. We ought to praise virtue (221, a). When the messenger was heard (216), the queen was-praised by the citizens of Corinth. The boys are very-fond of reading books (219). He values (it) at a great price (190).

LESSON 25.

PASSIVE VERBS (*continued*).

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES.

First and second persons.

243. The *first persons* singular and plural of the *present imperfect* and *first future* tenses passive of all verbs are formed by *adding* to the vowel-endings active in -o the letter -r; and by *changing* the consonant ending (m or s) into -r, as,

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	
1st Persons.		1st Persons.	
<i>Active.</i>	amō		
<i>Passive.</i>	amōr	<i>Singular.</i>	{ amem amēr
<i>Active.</i>	amāmūs		
<i>Passive.</i>	amāmūr	<i>Plural.</i>	{ amēnūs amēmūr.
<i>Imperfect.</i>			
<i>Active.</i>	amābam		
<i>Passive.</i>	amābār	<i>Singular.</i>	{ amārem amārēr ⁷⁴
<i>Active.</i>	amābāmūs		
<i>Passive.</i>	amābāmūr	<i>Plural.</i>	{ amārēmūs amārēmūr.

⁷³ Two or more nouns coupled by "and" require a verb plural.

⁷⁴ This person may be considered also as formed from the *infinitive active* by adding r; as *amare*, *amarer*.

Future.

1st & 2nd conj.
in -bo.3d & 4th conj.
in -am.

<i>Active.</i> amābō	}	<i>Singular.</i>	regam
<i>Passive.</i> amābōr			regar
<i>Active.</i> amābīmūs	}	<i>Plural.</i>	regēmūs
<i>Passive.</i> amābīmūr			regēmūr.

244. The *second persons*, singular and plural, of the *present*, *imperfect*, and first *future tenses* passive of all verbs are formed by changing -s of the second persons singular active into -ris and -re for the singular; and the -lis of the second person plural active into -mini and -minor for the passive; as,

INDICATIVE.

Present.

2nd Persons.

<i>Active.</i> amās	}	<i>Singular.</i>	amēs
<i>Passive.</i> amā-rīs or amā-rē			amē-rīs or amē-rē
<i>Active.</i> amā-tīs	}	<i>Plural.</i>	amē-tīs
<i>Passive.</i> amā-mīnī amā-mīnōr			amē-mīnī amē-mīnōr.

Imperfect.

<i>Active.</i> amābās	}	<i>Singular.</i>	amārēs
<i>Passive.</i> amābū-rīs or amābā-rē			amārē-rīs or amārē-rē.
<i>Active.</i> amābā-tīs	}	<i>Plural.</i>	amārē-tīs
<i>Passive.</i> amābā-mīnī amābā-mīnōr			amārē-mīnī amārē-mīnōr.

Future.

1st & 2nd conj.
in -bo.3d & 4th conj.
in -am.

<i>Active.</i> amāb-īs	}	<i>Singular.</i>	reg-ēs
<i>Passive.</i> amāb-ērīs amāb-ērē			regē-rīs or regē-rē

<i>Actice.</i> amābī- <i>īs</i>	}	<i>Plural.</i>	{	regō- <i>īs</i>
<i>Passive.</i> amābī- <i>mīnī</i>				regō- <i>mīnī</i> or

amābī- <i>mīnōr</i>		regō- <i>mīnōr</i> .
---------------------	--	----------------------

☞ In the first and second *conjugations* the futures in *-bo* in the second *persons* singular change the *-i* into *ē*; as, *actice*, amab-*is*; *passive*, amab-*ē-ris* or amab-*ē-rc* ^{is}.

QUESTIONS.

243. How are the first persons passive *singular* and *plural*, of all verbs in the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses formed? (Those first persons ending in *-o* add *-r*; those in *-m* or *-s* change

75 These tenses declined throughout are,

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Indicative</i>	(am)	<i>Potential or Subjunctive</i>
		(may or can be)

<i>Singular.</i>	Amōr	<i>Singular.</i>	Amēr
	— ē- <i>rīs</i> or }		— ē- <i>rīs</i> or }
	— ē- <i>rē</i> }		— ē- <i>rē</i>
	— ēt-ūr		— ēt-ūr
<i>Plural.</i>	— āmūr	<i>Plural.</i>	— ē- <i>mūr</i>
	— ī- <i>mīnī</i> or }		— ī- <i>mīnī</i> or }
	— ī- <i>mīnōr</i> }		— ī- <i>mīnōr</i>
	— ant-ūr		— ent-ūr.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	(was)		(would, could, should be)
<i>Singular.</i>	Amābīlīr	<i>Singular.</i>	Amārēr
	— ī- <i>rīs</i> or }		— ī- <i>rīs</i> or }
	— ī- <i>rē</i> }		— ī- <i>rē</i>
	— ēt-ūr		— ēt-ūr
<i>Plural.</i>	— īmūr	<i>Plural.</i>	— ī- <i>mūr</i>
	— ī- <i>mīnī</i> or }		— ī- <i>mīnī</i> or }
	— ī- <i>mīnōr</i> }		— ī- <i>mīnōr</i>
	— ant-ūr		— ent-ūr.

FUTURE TENSE.

	1st & 2nd conj.		3rd & 4th conj.
	(shall or will be)		(shall or will be)
<i>Singular.</i>	Amābōr	<i>Singular.</i>	Regūr
	— ībē- <i>rīs</i> or }		— ī- <i>rīs</i> or }
	— ībē- <i>rē</i> }		— ī- <i>rē</i>
	— ībēt-ūr		— īt-ūr
<i>Plural.</i>	— ībīmūr	<i>Plural.</i>	— ī- <i>mūr</i>
	— ībī- <i>mīnī</i> or }		— ī- <i>mīnī</i> or }
	— ībī- <i>mīnōr</i> }		— ī- <i>mīnōr</i>
	— ībūnt-ūr		— ent-ūr.

-m or *-s* into *-r*.) Give the changes in each tense.—244. How are the second persons in the *singular* for these tenses formed? (By changing the active second person singular endings in *-s* into *-ris* or *-re*.) How are the second persons *plural* formed? (By changing the active second person plural endings in *-is* into *-mini* and *-minor*.) Give the changes for the second persons in each tense.

EXERCISE 26.

245. *Juventus*, G. *-tūtis*, youth (time of youth).

Vis, G. *vis*⁷⁶, *sing.* force, violence.

Vires, G. *virium*, *pl.* strength.

Vir, G. *viri*⁷⁷, a man.

Velocitas, G. *-tatis*, *f.* swiftness.

Celeritas, G. *-tatis*, *f.* activity.

Consilium, G. *-lii*, counsel, design.

Sententia, G. *-æ*, prudence.

Legatus, G. *-i*, an ambassador.

Spern-ēre, (*spreti*,) to despise.

Ger-ēre, (*gessi, gestum*,) to carry on.

Delect-āre, to delight.

Excus-āre, to excuse.

Expell-ēre, (*expuli-ulsum*,) to drive out, expel.

Jub-ēre, (*jussi*,) to order.

Sine, *prep.* without (requires the *abl.*).

A *viris* ea geruntur in *juventute* et *viribus*. Spernabar a rege. Non *viribus*, aut *velocitate*, aut *celeritate* corporum res magnæ gerebantur, sed *consilio*⁷⁸, auctoritate, sententia. Sapientibus et bonis delectamini. Nos a pueris docebimur, docebimini vos a puellis. A te epistola scriberetur. Non magnâ sine causa excusabaris. Ab omnibus bonis a patriâ *expellemini*. A Cæsare jubeor⁷⁹ legatos mittere Romam. A Corintho *expellebar*. Rex consilium *duxit nihil*.

⁷⁶ The singular *vis* denotes *force*, *violence*, and is not so often used; *virg* is preferable.

⁷⁷ Mark the difference between the plurals *vires* and *viri*.

⁷⁸ When *three* or *more* nouns are joined together, it is usual either to *omit* the conjunction *et* entirely, or to *repeat* it to all; with but *two* nouns, it is seldom omitted.

⁷⁹ A *purpose* after verbs of *commanding* requires *ut* with the *subjunctive*, except *jubet*, which takes the *acc.* and *infinitive*.

246. Example.

Astu dolo specie deci-
By craftiness, by trick²⁰ and by appearance we were
 piebāmūr incauti²¹.
deceived unawares.

[We unawares were deceived by craftiness, by trick, and by the appearance.]

We shall-be-buried in the-city. I was-admired by many²² wise (men). (237, b.) You were-expelled from Corinth by the magistrates. Ye are-excused. I am-ordered to kill the slave with a sicord. I shall-be-delighted to come to-Rome. We should-be-delighted to-see the-city. Great things (res) are-carried-on by counsel and authority, not by strength (pl.) and swiftness of body (pl.). You will-be-expelled from (your) country by all good (men). We may-be-taught by prudence. You are-despised by all wise (men). He values the gift at-a-great-price (189, a). It is your duty (183) to learn, mine to-teach (52).

LESSON 26.

PASSIVE (continued).

Perfect, Pluperfect, and Futuro Perfect Tenses.

247. The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *futuro perfect* tenses in the passive voice are compound tenses ; that is, compounded of *two* verbs.

248. These tenses are formed of the *perfect participle* (in *-tus* or *-svs*, 202) in agreement with the nom. and the tenses of the verb *sum*.

²⁰ See note 78, p. 96.

²¹ Many adjectives in Latin can only be translated into the English idiom by the employment of adverbs ; as *incautus*, adj. *incautiously*, adv. ; *invitus*, adj. *unwillingly*, adv.

²² *Malius et.* See note 59.

249. The *perfect* tenses are formed of the *perfect participle*, and for the

<i>Indicative,</i> <i>Sum or fui</i> (declined throughout).	<i>Potential or Subj.</i> <i>Sim or fuerim</i> (declined throughout).
---	---

250. The *pluperfect* tenses are formed of the *perfect participle*; and for the

<i>Indicative,</i> <i>Eram or fueram</i> (declined throughout).	<i>Potential or Subj.</i> <i>Essem or fuerissem</i> (declined throughout).
---	--

251. The *future perfect* is formed of the *perfect participle* with the two *futures* of *sum*.

Ero or fuero^{ss} (declined throughout).

☞ The *participle* is declined like *bonus-a-um*, and agrees with the nom. in *gender, case, and number*.

23. PERFECT TENSES.

INDICATIVE.			POTENT. OR SUBJ.		
Sing.	(Have been.)		Sing.	(Should have been.)	
Ama- <i>tus</i>	<i>sum</i>	or <i>fui</i>	Ama- <i>tus</i>	<i>sim</i>	or <i>fuerim</i>
- <i>tus</i>	<i>es</i>	or <i>fuisisti</i>	- <i>tus</i>	<i>sis</i>	or <i>fueris</i>
- <i>tus</i>	<i>est</i>	or <i>fuit</i>	- <i>tus</i>	<i>sit</i>	or <i>fuerit</i>
Plur. - <i>ti</i>	<i>sumus</i>	or <i>fuiimus</i>	Plur. - <i>ti</i>	<i>simus</i>	or <i>fuerimus</i>
- <i>ti</i>	<i>estis</i>	or <i>fuisistis</i>	- <i>ti</i>	<i>sitis</i>	or <i>fueritis</i>
- <i>ti</i>	<i>sunt</i>	or <i>fuerunt</i> , <i>fuere</i>	- <i>ti</i>	<i>sint</i>	or <i>fuerint</i> .

PLUPERFECT TENSES.

Sing. (Had been.)		Sing. (Would have been.)	
Ama- <i>tus</i>	<i>eram</i>	or <i>fueram</i>	Ama- <i>tus</i> <i>essem</i> or <i>fuissem</i>
- <i>tus</i>	<i>eras</i>	or <i>fueras</i>	- <i>tus</i> <i>esses</i> or <i>fuisses</i>
- <i>tus</i>	<i>erat</i>	or <i>fuerat</i>	- <i>tus</i> <i>essel</i> or <i>fuisset</i>
Plur. - <i>ti</i>	<i>eramus</i>	or <i>fueramus</i>	Plur. - <i>ti</i> <i>essemus</i> or <i>fuissemus</i>
- <i>ti</i>	<i>eratis</i>	or <i>fueratis</i>	- <i>ti</i> <i>essetis</i> or <i>fuissetis</i>
- <i>ti</i>	<i>erant</i>	or <i>fuerant</i>	- <i>ti</i> <i>essent</i> or <i>fuissent</i> .

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

(Shall have been.)

Singular.			Plural.		
Ama- <i>tus</i>	<i>ero</i>	or <i>fuero</i>	Ama- <i>ti</i>	<i>erimus</i>	or <i>fuerimus</i>
- <i>tus</i>	<i>eris</i>	or <i>fueris</i>	- <i>ti</i>	<i>eritis</i>	or <i>fueritis</i>
- <i>tus</i>	<i>erit</i>	or <i>fuerit</i>	- <i>ti</i>	<i>erunt</i>	or <i>fuerint</i> .

QUESTIONS.

247. What are the *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses of the passive voice?—248. How are they formed? (Of the *past participle* and tenses of *sum*.)—249. How is the *perfect* tense formed for the indicative? How, for the *subjunctive* or *potential*?—250. How is the *pluperfect* tense for the *indicative* formed? How, for the *subjunctive* or *potential*?—251. How is the *future perfect* formed? How is the participle *declined*? (Like *bonus-a-um*.) How does it agree? (With the nom. in *gender*, *case*, and *number*.)

EXERCISE 27.

252. *Cœ-us-a-um*, part. of *cedēre*, to kill.

Sannis, G. *Sannītis*, a Samnite; a people near Rome.

Lachryma, G. *-æ*, a tear.

Fauci-æ-a, adj. *pl.* few.

Vulnus, G. *-nēris*, (n.) a wound.

Cassivellaunus, G. *-ni*, a ruler of Ancient Britain opposed to *Cæsar*.

Liber-āre, to set free.

Vinc-ēre, (vici, victum,) to conquer.

Fund-ēre, (fudi, fusum,) to pour out, shed.

Accip-ēre, (-cēpi, -ceptum,) to receive.

Interfic-ēre, (-fēci, -fēctum,) to kill.

Super-āre, to overcome.

E or *ex*, *prep.* of or out of (followed by an *abl.*: *ex* before vowels).

Rectè, *adv.* properly.

Postea, *adv.* afterwards.

Crudeliter, *adv.* cruelly.

Etiam, *conj.* even, also.

* * * Without a good *copia verborum*, it is impossible for a pupil to make very rapid progress in his acquirement of the Latin language; but, to aid him in storing words in his memory, the Author has written an *Analytical Latin Vocabulary*, having the English words derived from the Latin in close juxtaposition: this should be put into the pupil's hands contemporaneously with this work, and it will be found highly beneficial. The book is published by Messrs. Whittaker and Co.

Cæsis hostibus (216) *liberatus-est* exercitus: postea Samnites *victi-sunt*. Caesar etiam lachrymas fuisse dicitur. *Eram* epistolā tuā *delectatus*¹¹. Res magnæ consilio *gesiō sint*. A magistro recte *docti-essent*. Milites, paucis vulneribus acceptis, ex sylvis *expulsi-sint*. Latini pugnā *superati-sunt*. Pater ejus a Cassivellauno crudeliter *interfectus-erat*. *Quanti* (189, a) hoc emisti? *Nimio** emit.

253. Example.

Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi.
On-the-same day ambassadors from the enemy were-sent ad Cæsarem.

sent to Cæsar.

(\leftarrow) In which case is the *price* or *value* of a thing put? (189)

When the soldiers *were-slain* (216), ambassadors were sent to Cæsar. I *shall-be-taught* properly by the master *on-the-same day* (150, 253). You *were* afterwards¹² *delighted* with my letter (67). The wild-beasts *were-driven-out* of-the-woods by the citizens. The Samnites *were* cruelly *killed* by the Romans. I *have-been-set-free* by a better (174) (man) than (*omit*, 110, a) his father. The king, also, *is-said* to *have-shed* tears. Many good (things) *have-been-received* by you. We came to Rome, *on-the-same day*, to-see (160) the games. It is *the duty* of a Christian (175) *to help the poor*¹³. He values money (at) *too-much** (190). The former (148, b) *was-loved*, the latter *was-despised*.

¹¹ The participle is often separated from its verb.

¹² In English, adverbs in passive constructions stand *between* the auxiliary verb and the participle.

¹³ *Subvenire* (with a *dat.*) *pauperibus*.

* The adjectives of *price* and *value* (in 190) are sometimes found in the *ablative*, agreeing with *pretio* (*price*) understood.



475

P65F

LESSON 27.

PASSIVE (*continued*).

IMPERATIVE AND INFINITIVE MOODS.

254. The *passive imperative*, like the active, has *two* forms for each second person of each number; the *first* form of the *singular* is merely the infinitive active: as, *amārō*; the second form changes *-ro* into *-tōr*; as,

	I. conj.	II. conj.	III. conj.	IV. conj.
Imperative,	{ <i>amārē</i>	<i>monērē</i>	<i>regērē</i>	<i>audīrē</i>
	{ <i>amā-tōr</i>	<i>monē-tōr</i>	<i>regī-tōr</i>	<i>audi-tōr</i> .

[The short *ē* of the third conj. becomes *ī*.]

255. The *second person plural* is the same as the second person plural of the passive *present indicative*.

256. The other persons are borrowed from the *present subjunctive* ²⁷.

[The third persons, however, have a second form, which is the same as that of the active imperative with *r* appended; as,

Active, *amāto*, *sing.* *amanto*, *plur.*
Passive, *amātōr*, *sing.* *amantōr*, *plur.*]

²⁷ The *imperative* *is*,

Singular.	I. CONJ.	II. CONJ.	III. CONJ.	IV. CONJ.
2nd { person. {	<i>am-āre</i>	<i>mon-ēre</i>	<i>reg-ēre</i>	<i>aud-īre</i>
	— <i>ātōr</i>	— <i>ētōr</i>	— <i>ītōr</i>	— <i>ītōr</i>
3rd { person. {	(— <i>ētūr</i> subj.)	(— <i>ētūr</i>)	(— <i>ātūr</i>)	(— <i>lātūr</i>)
	— <i>ātōr</i>	— <i>ētōr</i>	— <i>ītōr</i>	— <i>ītōr</i>
<i>Plural.</i>				
2nd { person. {	— <i>āmānī</i>	— <i>ēmānī</i>	— <i>īmānī</i>	— <i>īmānī</i>
	— <i>āmānōr</i>	— <i>ēmānōr</i>	— <i>īmānōr</i>	— <i>īmānōr</i>
3rd { person. {	(— <i>ēntūr</i> subj.)	(— <i>ēntūr</i>)	(— <i>āntūr</i>)	(— <i>lāntūr</i>)
	— <i>āntōr</i>	— <i>ēntōr</i>	— <i>īntōr</i>	— <i>īntōr</i>

257. There are two important tenses in the *passive infinitive*, as in the active; viz., the *present* and the *perfect*⁸⁸.

(a) The passive **INFINITIVE present** is formed from the active by changing *-e* into *-i* for the first, second, and fourth conjugations; as,

PRESENT INFINITIVES.

I.	II.	IV.
<i>Active</i> , amārē	monērē	audīrē
<i>Passive</i> , amāri	monēri	audīri.

(b) The third conjugation forms the *present infinitive* passive by changing the whole ending *-ere* of the active infinitive into *-i*; as,

PRESENT INFINITIVE.

III. conj.

<i>Active</i> , reg-ērē
<i>Passive</i> , reg-i ⁸⁹ .

258. The *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses of the *infinitive* passive are formed of the past participle (in the *accusative* case) with *esse* and *fuisse* (of *sum*).

I. conj.	II. conj.	III. conj.	IV. conj.
amātūm	monētūm	rectūm	audītūm
<i>esse</i> or <i>fuisse</i> .			

259. There is a *future* in the infinitive passive, which is made of the supine in *-um* and the word *iri*,

⁸⁸ The *present* infinitive expresses a state of suffering *still continuing*; the *perfect* infinitive expresses the same state *completed*.

⁸⁹ In older Latin the *passive infinitives* will be found lengthened by the addition of the syllable *-er*; as,

I.	II.	III.	IV.
amari-er	monēri-er	regi-er	audīri-er.

which is rendered into English by the phrase “*about to be* ;” as,

Lat. *Monitum iri*²⁰.
Eng. *About-to-be* advised.

QUESTIONS.

254. How many forms has the *imperative* passive for each 2nd person? (*Two.*) What is the first form for the second person singular? (The same as the *infinitive active*.) What is the second form? (The *-re* of the first form changed into *-tor*.) What does the short *e* of the third conjugation become? (i.)—255. What are the forms of the second person plural?—256. Whence are the other persons obtained? (From the *present subjunctive*.) Which are the second forms of the third persons? (The same as those of the active with *r* appended.)—257. How is the *present infinitive passive* obtained? (By changing the *e* of the active infinitive to *i*, in the first, second, and fourth conjugations.) (b) How is it formed for the third conjugation? (By changing the whole ending *-ere* into *-i*.)—258. How are the *perfect* and *pluperfect* formed? (Of the past participle in *agreement* with its substantive, and *esse* or *fuisse*.)—259. What is the *futuris* *infinitive passive*? (The supine in *-um*, with *-iri*.) What does it express? (*About to be*.)

EXERCISE 28.

260. *Syracusa*, G. *-α*, *Syracuso*, an important town of ancient Sicily.

Scipio, G. *-ōnis*, *Scipio*, a celebrated Roman general, the conqueror of Carthage.

Libertas, G. *-ātis*, f. liberty.

Caius, G. *Cai-i*, *Caius*, a noble Roman.

Conglutiñatio, G. *-ōnis*, f. cement.

Recens, G. *-ntis*, adj. fresh.

²⁰ The word *iri* is properly the infinitive of the impersonal verb *ītūr* denoting “*things tend* ;” hence,

Lat. *Audio eum monitum iri.*
Eng. I hear him to advising *that-things-tend*.

Eng. constr. [I hear *that-things-tend* to-advising him: or, *that he is about to be advised*.]—*Zumpt*.

Inveteratus-*a-um*, part. old, lasted a long time.
 Divell-*ēre*, (-*velli*⁹¹, -*vulsum*,) to tear asunder.
 Del-*ēre*, (-*ēvi*, -*ētum*,) to destroy, blot out.
 Sent-*ire*, (*sensi*, -*sum*,) to perceive, know.
Ægre, *adv.*, with difficulty.
 Facile, *adv.*, easily.

Rem⁹² recte *geri* audio Romæ. Syracusæ regem *delectari* dicunt senatōres. Carthaginem a Scipione *deletam-esse* omnes sciunt (199). Regulo libertatem non *dari*, sed *datam-esse* Caio, sentimus. Ab omnibus sapientibus *amator*. Magistro *audiamini*. Ab hoste exercitum *superatum-esse* milites vehementer negaverunt. Caium *pluris* (189, a) aëstimari Romæ quam Carthagine videtis. Omnis conglutinatio recens ægre, inveterata facile divellitur.

261. Example.

De republicā me bene *mereri* cogito.

Of the state that-I well have deserved I think.

Eng. constr. [I think that I have deserved well of the state.]

Be-yo-ruled by prudence. We hear *that* (omit) liberty *has-been-given* to Caius. They say⁹³ the king *was-overcome* by the numbers of the enemy. *Be advised* by Caius not (163) to return (160) home⁹⁴. I perceive *that* you *are advised* (*purpose*) to return to Africa (151, c). I know that you are *so much* (190) esteemed *as* to be loved by all. They say⁹⁵ the thing

⁹¹ *Divelli* more frequently than *divulsi* in the perfect tense.

⁹² The *accusative* with *infinitive* must be taken immediately after the principal verb, and be translated by putting the English word "*that*" before the *accusative*, and translating the *infinitive* as a principal verb; as, in the above sentence,—

Audio *rem* *geri* recte Romæ.

I hear *that* the thing was-carried-on properly at Rome.

⁹³ The word "*that*" is frequently omitted in English.

⁹⁴ *Domus*, a house, at home, and *rus*, *ruris*, the country, are used with the same construction as proper names of towns, &c., after verbs of motion (151, a and c).

is reckoned *at nothing*. It is *your duty* (183) to go to Rome to-day. It is *the business* of a king to govern the state. I shall remain *a few days* (150) at Carthage.

LESSON 28.

DEPONENT VERBS.

262. There are some verbs in Latin which have a *passive* form, but an *active* meaning; these are called *deponent verbs*²³; as,

Loquor, I speak.

263. Deponent verbs have different *cases* after them.

With *to forget*—*to remember*—*pity*—*place*
 The noun that follows in the *genitive* case;
 But *to enjoy*, *discharge*, and also *use*,
 You must an *ablative* introduce²⁴.

QUESTIONS.

What are *deponent verbs*? (262.)—Which take a *genitive* after them? Which, an *ablative*?

EXERCISE 29.

264.

Munus, G. -ūris, <i>n.</i> duty, gift.	Vestis, G. -tis, <i>f.</i> a garment.
Frater, G. -tris, a brother.	Fœmina, G. -a, a woman.
Præterita, G. -ōrum, <i>pl.</i> things past.	Manus, G. -ūs, <i>f.</i> a hand.
Præsens, G. -ntis, adj. the present.	Factus- <i>a</i> - <i>um</i> , <i>pt.</i> done, made (from <i>facio</i>).
Commodus- <i>a</i> - <i>um</i> , adj. convenient (commoda, <i>pl.</i> things convenient, necessities).	Sardanapalus, G. -i, a very effeminate king of Assyria.
Lux, G. lucis, light.	Beneficium, G. -ii, a kindness.
	Pauper, G. er- <i>is</i> , adj. poor.

²³ They are called *Deponent*, because they *lay aside* their *passive* signification, and *active* form.

²⁴ To which may be added *potior*, to get possession of; *rescor*, to feed; *dignor*, to be worthy; *nitor*, to endeavour; *lætor*, to rejoice; *glorior*, to boast,—taking *ablatives*.

*Pol-īri, (potitus,) to-be-in-possession-of, enjoy (with *gen. acc.* or *abl.*).*

*Fung-ī, (functus,) to discharge (with *abl.* and sometimes *acc.*).*

*Vesc-ī, to live upon, feed on (with *abl.* and sometimes *acc.*).*

*Uti, (usus,) to use (with *abl.* and sometimes *acc.*).*

*Fru-ī, (frutus & fructus,) to enjoy (with *abl.* and sometimes *acc.*).*

Nit-ī, (nī-us & nixus,) to endeavour.

Reminisc-ī, } to recollect, remember.

*Memin-ī, meminisse, } to recollect, remember.
(*Memini* has only the tenses of *completed actions, perfect, pluperfect, and second future.*)*

Miser-ēri, (miseritus and misertus,) to pity.

Oblivisc-ī, (oblitus,) to forget.

*Nunquam, *adv.* never.*

Multis libris a doctissimo magistro meo scriptis nunc *potior*. Boni parentis munere frater *fungitur* excellentissime. Nititur, ut praeteritorum reminiscatur beneficiorum. Praeteritis *potitus-cst* ille, nos praesentibus *potiemur*. Britanni carne et lacte *rescuntur*. Parentes liberorum *obliviscuntur* nunquam (68). Commoda quibus (note "", p. 55,) *utimur*, lucemque quā *fruimur*, a Deo nobis dari videmus. Veste sc̄minarum manibus suis factū Sardanapalus *utitur..* Pauperum semper *miserēre*.

265. Example.

Fraude utitur ut exercitum in itinere sequatur.
Deceit he uses that the army in its journey may follow.

Eng. constr. [He uses deceit that he may follow the army in its journey.]

Always *remember* and *pity* the poor. A good (man) never *forgets* the kindness of his friends. It is *the duty of children to endeavour to learn the precepts* of (their) masters (*a purpose*), and not to *forget* (inf.) to *discharge* (their) duty to their parents. Croesus *was-in-the-possession-of* money, not wisdom. We *live-*

upon flesh and milk. *Forget not* (147) to *use* and *enjoy* the necessities of life. Endeavour to estimate (*purpose*) virtue *at-a-great-price* (189). It is *the duty* of a magistrate *to-perform*¹¹ justice, and it is *my duty* to obey the laws (*dat.*).

LESSON 29.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

POSSUM.

266. Such verbs as do not conform to the rules that have been previously laid down for the conjugation of verbs are termed *irregular verbs*.

267. Among these the first of importance is *possum* (to be able, or can, could), compounded of an old adjective *potis* and *sum*.

(a) The root *pot-* is retained in the conjugation of the verb, but the final letter undergoes some change: before *s* the *t* becomes *s*: as,

potsum becomes possum (I am able).

(b) The *t* coming before a vowel remains; as,

pot-es (thou art able).

pot-est (he is able).

(pot-sumus) pos-sumus (we are able).

pot-estis (ye are able).

(pot-sunt) pos-sunt (they are able).

(c) When the *t* comes before *f*, it throws away the *f*; as in the *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *second future tenses*,

(pot-fui) becomes pot-ui (I have been able).

(pot-fulisti) ... pot-isti (thou hast been able).

And so on regularly.

268. According to these rules, apply the root *pot-* to all the tenses of *sum*¹².

¹¹ *Fungi.*

¹² PRESENT.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

<i>pos-sum,</i>	<i>pot-es,</i>	<i>pot-est,</i>	<i>pos-sim,</i>	<i>pos-sis,</i>	<i>pos-sit,</i>
<i>(pot-sum)</i>			<i>(pot-sim)</i>		
<i>pos-sumus,</i>	<i>pot-estis,</i>	<i>pot-sunt</i>	<i>pos-simus,</i>	<i>pos-sitis,</i>	<i>pos-sint.</i>
<i>(pot-sumus)</i>		<i>(pot-sunt)</i>			<i>[IMPERFECT.</i>

☞ There is no IMPERATIVE mood.

In the *present INFINITIVE* and *imperfect SUBJUNCTIVE* there is a contraction :

Infinitive, pot-esse contracts into posse.

Subjunctive, pot-essem becomes possem.
pot-essem . . . posses. &c.

(And so on, throughout the tense.)

269. *Esse* when it means "to have" will place
The person in the *dativo* case :

270. The compounds too of *sum* a *dativo* find
(Excepting *possum*, bear in mind).

Est mihi nomen (269) { *Lat.* A name is to me.
{ *Eng.* I have a name.

Indicative.

IMPERFECT.

Subjunctive.

(contracted.)

pot-eram, *pot-eras*, *pot-erat*, | *pos'sem*, *pos'ses*, *pos'set*,
pot-eramus, *pot-eratis*, *pot-erant*. | *pos'semus*, *pos'setis*, *pos'sent*.

FIRST FUTURE.

pot-ero, *pot-eris*, *pot-erit*,
pot-erimus, *pot-eritis*, *pot-erint*.

PERFECT.

(*pot-fui*). | (*pot-fuerim*).
pot-ni, *pot-uisti*, *pot-uit*, | *pot-uerim*, *pot-ueris*, *pot-uerit*,
pot-uimus, *pot-uistis*, *pot-uérunt* | *pot-uerimus*, *pot-ueritis*, *pot-uerint*.
or *erē*.

PLUPERFECT.

(*pot-fueram*). | (*pot-fuisse*).
pot-ueram, *pot-ueras*, *pot-uerat*, | *pot-uissem*, *pot-uisses*, *pot-uisset*,
pot-ueramus, *pot-ueratis*, *pot-uerant* | *pot-uissimus*, *pot-uissetis*, *pot-uissent*.

SECOND FUTURE.

(*pot-fuero*).
pot-uero, *pot-ueris*, *pot-uerit*,
pot-uerimus, *pot-ueritis*, *pot-uerint*.

INFINITIVE.

Present and Imperfect, *posse* (pot-esse).
Perfect and Pluperfect, *posse* (pot-fuisse).

Derivative Adjective (not a participle),
pot-ens (powerful).

Some compounds of *sum* have a *present participle*; as, *absens*.

QUESTIONS.

266. What are those verbs termed that do not conform to the previous rules of conjugation? (*Irregular verbs.*)—267. What is *possum* compounded of? (Old adj. *potis* (able) and *sum.*) What changes does the final letter of the root undergo? (The *t* before *s* becomes *s* (*a*); before a vowel *t* remains (*b*); and before *f* it throws away *f* (*c*), 268.—Apply the root *pot* to all the tenses of *sum* according to these rules. (Note ²².) What is the imperative of *possum*? (It has none.) What does the *present* infinitive and *imperfect* subjunctive of *possum* suffer? (*Contraction* ²³) What does *sum* require when it means *to have*? [A *dative* (269).] What do the compounds of *sum* require? [All require a *dative* except *possum* (270).] What is *potens*? (An *adjective*, not a *participle*, note ²² * * *.)

EXERCISE 30.

271. *Present tense.*

Ego facere possum, *I can do.*
 Tu facere potes, *thou canst do,*
 (*and so on.*)

Perfect.

Ego facere potui, *I could have done.*
 Tu facere potuisti, *thou couldst have done.*
 (*Past* time is to be expressed by the *finite verb*, not by the *infinitive*.)

Tres, (neut. *tria*,) *adj.* three.
 Rus, G. *ruris*, *n.* country.
 Faculta^s, G. -*titis*, *f.* opportunity, power.
 Voluptas, G. *titis*, *f.* pleasure.
 Coniunctio, G. -*ōnis*, *f.* union.
 Ingenium, G. -*i*, talent, skill.
 Opus, G. -*ēris*, *n.* a work.
 Ambul-*are*, to walk.
 De-*esse*, (de-*fui*,) to be wanting, fail.
 Si, *conj.* if.

Tres *miki sunt libri ruris.* (Note ²⁴, p. 104.) Ma-
 ter mea hodie hoc facere *potest*. Eo tempore Co-
 rinthum ambulare non *potero*. Dolabella epistolam

scribere *potuit*, si venisset in Græciam. Rem facere *potuisti* si tibi facultas esset. Nulla *potest* esse voluptati (270) cum honestate conjunctio. Ad hoc opus mihi ingenium non *defuit*. Id aetatis (184) nihil Cæsari *defuit*. Tres annos Carthagine manserunt duces. Ne multum discas sed multa.

272. Example.

Sunt mihi bis septem liberi.
There are to me twice seven children.

Eng. constr. [*I have* fourteen children.]

You have three slaves, and *I have* fourteen: *I can do* this properly if you will come home. We *could have walked* into the city. *He has* much *talent* but you have *more money*, and I have *very little* time. I can write to Caesar. I can write¹⁰⁰. Many things *failed me* at that time. At that age *I had* many opportunities during playing (part. in *-dus*, 69). We shall be able to write three letters to-day. I shall remain at Carthage *four days*. I have much money, *which I can enjoy*.

LESSON 30.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

VOLO, NOLO, MALO.

273. *Volo* (to be willing) with its compounds *nolo*, for *non-volo* (to be unwilling); and *malo*, for *magis* or *magis volo* (to be more willing), is very irregular, but only in the *present* tenses throughout, and in the *imperfect subjunctive*.

¹⁰⁰ To express the power of doing a thing *generally*, *possim* is used; the power to do a *particular* thing requires *possum*.

274. The *present tenses* of these verbs are all contracted.

INDICATIVE Present.

(*To be willing.*) (*To be unwilling.*) (*To be more willing, or to have rather.*)

<i>volo</i>	<i>nolo</i>	<i>malo</i>
<i>vis</i> (for <i>tolis</i>)	<i>non-vis</i>	<i>ma-vis</i>
<i>vult</i> (for <i>tolit</i>)	<i>non-vult</i>	<i>ma-vult</i>

Plural.

<i>tolū-mus</i>	<i>nolū-mus</i>	<i>malū-mus</i>
<i>vul-tis</i> (for <i>tolitis</i>)	<i>non-vul-tis</i>	<i>ma-vul-tis</i>
<i>tolunt</i>	<i>nolunt</i>	<i>malunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE Present¹⁰¹.

<i>telim</i>	<i>nolim</i>	<i>malim</i>
<i>telis</i>	<i>nolis</i>	<i>malis</i>
&c.	&c.	&c.

With the regular personal endings (140).

INFINITIVE Present.

<i>telle</i>	<i>nolle</i>	<i>mallo</i>
--------------	--------------	--------------

IMPERATIVE Present.

<i>colo</i>	<i>noli</i>	<i>nolito</i>	<i>malo</i>
has none.	pl. <i>noli-te</i> , <i>noli-tote</i> .	has none.	

275. The other irregularity is only in the *imperfect subjunctive*.

<i>tellem</i>	<i>nollem</i>	<i>mallem</i>
<i>telles</i>	<i>nolles</i>	<i>malles</i>
&c.	&c.	&c.

With the usual endings (140).

276. The remaining tenses are like the third conj.,

¹⁰¹ The present *subjunctive* is often used for the present *indicative* of these verbs, to soften the expression.

but the *perfect* is in *-ui*, which affects all the *completed actions*¹⁰².

277. (a) When the English words “*will*” and “*would*” imply merely *futurity*, they are expressed in Latin by a tense of the following verb; as,

I *will* come—*veniam*
I *would* come—*venirem*.

(b) When these words imply *inclination*, or when the sentence is *absolute* and *independent* of any other, use a tense of *volo*; and put the following verb in the *infinitive*.

I *will* go—*ire volo*
I *would* go—*ire vellem*.

278. When “*can*” and “*could*” are in sentences *absolute* and *independent* of any other, they can be expressed by a tense of *possum* with the following verb in the *infinitive*; as,

Eng. I *can* read
Lat. *Legere possum*.

¹⁰² INDICATIVE.

<i>Imperfect.</i> <i>Vol-ebam</i> , &c.	<i>nol-ebam</i> , &c.	<i>mal-ebam</i> , &c.
<i>Future.</i> <i>Vol-am</i> , &c.	<i>nol-am</i> , &c.	<i>mal-am</i> , &c.

Completed-actions.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i> <i>Vol-ui</i> , &c.	<i>nol-ui</i> , &c.	<i>mal-ui</i> , &c.
<i>Pluperfect.</i> <i>Volu-eram</i> , &c.	<i>nolu-eram</i> , &c.	<i>malu-eram</i> , &c.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i> <i>Volu-ero</i> , &c.	<i>nolu-ero</i> , &c.	<i>malu-ero</i> , &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i> <i>Volu-erim</i> , &c.	<i>nolu-erim</i> , &c.	<i>malu-erim</i> , &c.
<i>Pluperfect.</i> <i>Volu-issem</i> , &c.	<i>nolu-issem</i> , &c.	<i>malu-issem</i> , &c.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Perfect & }</i> <i>Volu-isse</i> <i>Pluperf.</i> <i>Volu-isse</i>	<i>nolu-isse</i>	<i>malu-isse</i>
---	------------------	------------------

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Vol-ens</i>	<i>nol-ens</i>	<i>male</i> , has none.
----------------	----------------	-------------------------

279. "*That—not*" with a *purpose* must not be
 " *Ut*" with a negative, but only "*no*."

QUESTIONS.

273. What are the compounds of *volo*? In what tenses are they so very irregular?—274. Go through the *present* tenses of these verbs.—275. What is the other irregularity?—276. How are the remaining tenses conjugated? (Like the third conjugation.) What is the perfect ending? (-*ui*.) What does this affect? (All the tenses for the *completed* actions formed from it, as in the other conjugations.)—277. How are *will* and *would* expressed in Latin when denoting *futurity*? (By a tense of the verb following *will* and *would*.) When these words imply *inclination*, and when the sentence is independent of any other, how is it expressed? (By a tense of *volo* with the following verb in the *infinitive*.)—278. When *can* and *could* are in *independent* sentences, how are they expressed? (By a tense of *possum* with the following verb in the *infinitive*.)—279. How is *that* followed by *not* in a purpose expressed?

EXERCISE 31.

280. *Periculum*, G. -*i*, danger.
Petere, G. -*ntis*, (part.) seeking.
Ridiculus-*a*-*um*, adj. ridiculous.
Invidia, G. -*æ*, f. envy, odium.
Aliq-uis, -*qua*, -*quod* and *quid*, pron. some.
Ire, *iri*, (perf. of *eo*,) to go.
Redire, *ivi*, to return.
Appar-ēre, to appear, be visible.
Ambul-are, to walk.
Port-are, to carry.
Conserv-are, to preserve.
Impetr-are, to effect, bring to pass.
Quer-ēre, (quesiti*v*i, -*situm*,) to seek.
Vid-ēri, (visus,) to seem.
Vidēre, (vidi, visus,) to see.
Confl-are, to bring, make.

Athenas ire voluit, ne¹⁰³ Cæsarem viderit. Hoc

¹⁰³ "Ne with the *subjunctive* may be rendered by "lest;" or "not to;" or by "that—not."

nunc facere possum. Multum discere volo, *ne insipiens appaream.* Eum rogabo ut domum ambulet. Titurius hoc fecit, *ut* sine periculo ad eum portari *posset.* Petentibus hostibus ut conservarentur, Cæsar impertravit. Est ridiculum querere quæ habere non possumus. Tu mihi videbare aliquam invidiam Cœlio¹⁰⁴ velle conflare. Spartam redire *volebat*, *ne* invidiam *conflaret.* *Malum esse* quam videri bonus.

281. Example.

Nolui *hoc facere, ne insipiens viderer.*
I was unwilling this to do, lest foolish I should seem.

English construction. [I was unwilling to do this, lest I should seem foolish.]

I am-willing to write the letter *lest* (note¹⁰³ p. 113.) *I bring* some odium *on-myself* (*dat.*). Titurius *will do* (277, *b*) this, *that* he *may please* Caesar. *I will-ask* him to do (*ut* and *subj.*) this *to-day*. *I am-more-willing* to go to-Rome than to Corinth. The soldiers seeking (*it*) (*abl. abs.*), Titurius brought-it-to-pass *that* he might *not seem* unfriendly. He was-unwilling to seek what (*neut. pl.*) he *was not able* to have. He can do (278) this. *I shall walk* to Athens *that* I *may not appear* unfriendly. *When* the ambassadors were sent (216), he remained at Rome four days to preserve (*purpose*) his brother. If I am wiser than (*quam*) my father, I shall *remain* two days *lest* I *may-forget* what is to be done (pt. in *-dus*).

LESSON 31.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

FERO—*passive*, FEROR.

282. The verb *fero* (to bear) and its passive *feror* (to be borne) are composed of different parts, and

¹⁰⁴ Cœlio, on Cællus.

have irregularity only in the *present* tense indicative and imperative.

283. The root of the tenses for *not-completed* actions (*pres. imp.* and *fut.*) is *fer-* (*fer-o*); as,

INDICATIVE.

Present-

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Fero</i>	<i>fers</i>	<i>fert</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferris</i>	<i>feritur</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>ferimur</i>	<i>ferimini</i>	<i>feruntur</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>2d, fer</i>	<i>ferto</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>fertor</i>
	<i>3d,</i>	<i>ferto</i>		<i>fertor</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>fer-te</i>	<i>ferto-lv</i>	<i>feri-miñi</i>	<i>feri-miñor</i>

INFINITIVE.

Ferre

Ferrari

* * These tenses form the only *irregularity*.

ACT. FASS.

284. The present subj. is imperf. INDIC.	feram	ferar (reg.)
imperf. subj.	ferēbam	ferebar (reg.)
participle pres.	ferrem	ferrer (reg.)
gerunds	ferens.	
	ferendi-do-dum.	

285. The tenses of the *completed*-actions are formed from the root *tul-* (*tuli*), and are all regularly declined.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

INFIN.

Perf. tul-i, &c. tul-erim, &c. }
Pluperf. tul-cram, &c. tul-issem, &c. }
Fut. perf. tul-cro, &c.

286. The *perfect* *na*

286. The *perfect participle* is from the root (*latus*), and is used for the tenses of the *complete*

actions in the passive"

286. The *perfect participle* is from the root (*latus*), and is used for the tenses of the *complete*

actions in the passive"

105 In the passive,

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>latus-sum, &c.</i>	<i>latus-erim, &c.</i>	}	<i>latum-esse.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>latus-eram, &c.</i>	<i>latus-essem, &c.</i>		
<i>Fut. pers.</i>	<i>latus-ero, &c.</i>			

<i>Perf. part.</i>	<i>Fut. in -rus.</i>
<i>Latus.</i>	<i>latu-rus-a-um</i> ¹⁰⁶ .

287. " *So*" and " *such*" preceding " *that*"¹⁰⁷,
 A consequence relate ;
 By " *ut*" with the *subjunctive* then
 This consequence translate.

As, *Tam* benignus est *ut* omnibus *ametur*.
So kind he-is that by-all he-is-lored.

Eng. constr. He is *so* kind *that* he-is-lored by all,
 or, He is *so* kind *as to* be loved by all¹⁰⁸.

288. When *negatives* attend a *consequence*,
 " *That*" still express by " *ut* ;"
 For " *not*," or English *negative*, you then
 A Latin *negative* must put.

As, *Tam* ignavus est puer, *ut* *non* facere possit.
So idle is the boy, *that* *not* do he can.

(Consequence.)

Eng. constr. [*So* idle is the boy, *that* he cannot do (*it*)].

<i>afferō</i>	<i>at-tuli</i>	<i>ad-latum</i> (bring) (<i>ad</i> , to).
<i>auferō</i>	<i>ab-tuli</i>	<i>ab-latum</i> (take away) (<i>a</i> , <i>ab</i> , <i>abs</i> , from).
<i>confero</i>	<i>con-tuli</i>	<i>col-latum</i> (bring together) (<i>cum</i> , with).
<i>differō</i>	<i>dis-tuli</i>	<i>di-latum</i> (scatter) (<i>di</i> or <i>dis</i> , apart).
<i>effero</i>	<i>ex-tuli</i>	<i>e-latum</i> (carry out) (<i>e</i> , <i>ex</i> , out).
<i>inferō</i>	<i>in-tuli</i>	<i>il-latum</i> (carry in) (<i>in</i> , <i>in</i>).
<i>offerō</i>	<i>ob-tulli</i>	<i>ob-latum</i> (bring to) (<i>ob</i> , for, against).
<i>proferō</i>	<i>pro-tuli</i>	<i>pro-latum</i> (set forward) (<i>pro</i> , for).
<i>refero</i>	<i>re-tuli</i>	<i>re-latum</i> (bring again) (<i>re</i> , again, back).
<i>sufferō</i>	<i>sus-tuli</i>	<i>sub-latum</i> * (bear) (<i>sub</i> , under).
<i>transferō</i>	<i>trans-tuli</i>	<i>translatum</i> (transfer) (<i>trans</i> , on the other side).

* *Sustuli* and *sublatum* are borrowed from the verb *tollo*; *suffero* has not these tenses of its own.

¹⁰⁷ Instead of " *that*" after *so* and *such*, we often find " *as-to*," which also requires *ut* and the *subj*.

289. When *negatives* attend a *purpose*,
 Remember, " *ut* " will be,
 With the negative omitted,
 Converted into " *no*."

As, Puerum monet ne faciat. (*Purpose*.
 The boy he advises *that not* he may do (it).

Eng. constr. [*He advises the boy that he may not do it.*]
 Or, [*He advises the boy not to do it.*]

QUESTIONS.

282. Wherein does the irregularity of *fero* and its passive *feror* consist?—283. What is the root of the tenses for the *not-completed actions*? (*fe-*.) Say the *present* tenses indicative, imperative, and infinitive.—284. What are the tenses of the *present subjunctive*? The *imperfect* indic. and subj.? The *present participle*? and the *gerunds*?—285. From what root are tenses for the *completed-actions* formed? (*Tul-*) How are they conjugated? (*Regularly*.) Say the *first* persons of each tense.—286. From what root is the *perfect* participle and *future* in *-rus* derived? (*Laf-*) For what other tenses is this same root used? (See note ¹⁰³.)—287. When *so* and *such* precede " *that*," what do they imply? (*A consequence*.) How is a consequence expressed? (Say the lines 287.) What is often found after *so* and *such* instead of " *that* "? (*as to*.)—288. When *negatives* such as *not*, *none*, *never*, &c. attend a *consequence*, how are they expressed? (Say lines 288.)—289. When *negatives* attend a *purpose*, how are they expressed? (Say lines 289.)

EXERCISE 32.

290. **Immortalis**, -*tale*, *adj.* immortal.
Consilium, G. -*lii*, design.
Auxilium, G. -*lii*, assistance.
Tarditas, G. -*tatis*, *f.* slowness.
Salvus-a-um, *adj.* safe.
Quirites, -*tium*, *pl.* Quirites, a name applied to Roman citizens.
Audacia, G. -*æ*, *f.* audacity, boldness.
Nullus-a-um, *indef.-pron.* none.

Improbus-*a-um*, *adj.* wicked, profligate.
 Præscrib-*ēre*, (-*psi*, -*ptum*,) to direct, prescribe (*dat.*).
 Ag-*ēre*, (egi, *aclum*,) to do.
 Fero, ferre, } (*tuli*, *latum*,) { to bear, carry.
 Feror, ferri, } to be borne.
 Obstup-*ēre*, (from *obstupesco*, *obstupui*,) to be astonished.
 Colloc-*āre*, to place.
 Statu-*ēre*, (*statui*, *ūtum*,) to appoint, determine.
 Perspic-*ēre*, (-*exi*, -*ctum*,) to behold, see into.
 Laces-*ēre*, (-*sivi* and *ii*, *ūtum*,) to provoke, excite.
 Administr-*āre*, to manage.

Magistratus militibus præscripsérunt, nē¹⁰³ quid (289) agerent. Omnia fert ætas. Sic obstupuérunt *ut* patrem suum *non* viderent. Omnia hæc *īta* sunt a me administrata¹⁰⁴, *ut* deorum immortalium consilio gesta esse videantur. Tertio die auxilium nobis *tulērunt*. *Tanta* fuit operis tarditas, *ut* neque a consulibus neque a nobis ferretur. Illos *īta* collocandos consules statuérunt, *ut* ab omnibus perspici possent. *Ita* me gessi, Quirites, *ut* omnes salvi conservaremī. Est in nobis *tantus* animus, *ut* non modo nullius audaciæ cedamus, sed etiam omnes improbos semper laces-samus.

291. Example.

Nemo *tam* bonus est, *ut* omnem injuriam ferat.
No-one so good is, as¹¹⁰ every indignity to-bear.

[No one is *so good as to bear every indignity.*]

Junius was not *so unskilled in matters (rērum)* *as¹¹⁰* to trust¹¹¹ *that* he was-able to overcome the Roman

¹⁰³ Translate "ne" as "not," and the verb as an *infinitive*—ne quid agerent, *not to do anything.*

¹⁰⁴ The *perfect* with *have* may be considered as referring to *present* time, and is therefore followed by a *pres.* subjunctive.

¹¹⁰ *As* after *so* and *such*, when they precede *infinitives*, is rendered into Latin by *ut*, and the verb must be in the *subjunctive* and in the tense required by the preceding verb. (See 103.)

¹¹¹ *Confidat.*

people with *his-own* forces. They were *so* poor *that* they were *not* able *to-bring* assistance to their own (friends). He *bears* the thing well. *So great* is his courage, *that* he yields *not* to any-one. The consul determined that the standard ¹¹² *should be* so *placed* (fut. part. in *-dus*) that (it) could be seen by all. They *brought* assistance, *that* they might *not* (289) offend Cæsar. The magistrates *so* directed the soldiers *that* they could (use *possum*) do *nothing*. It is the *duty of* (one) a friend, to help another (*dat.*) in adversity.

LESSON 32.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued.*)

EDO. FIO. EO.

292. *Edo* (I eat) is conjugated regularly like the third conjugation; but it has in addition, in some few tenses, a form similar to those of *sum* ¹¹³.

293. *Fio* (I become *or* am made) has an active form for the tenses of the *not-completed* actions (*pres.* *imp.* and *fut.*) which are all regularly declined like the fourth conjugation.

¹¹² *Vexillum.*¹¹³ INDICATIVE (*Present.*)

Sing.	Edo	Sing.	ede	IMPERATIVE.
	Edis or es		edito	} or { es
	Edit or est		edito	or esto
Plur.	Edimus	Plur.	edite	} or { este
	Editis		editote	estote
	Edunt		edunto	

SUBJUNCTIVE (*Imperfect.*)

Sing.	Ederem or essem	Plur.	ederemus	or essemus
	Ederes or esses		ederetis	or essetis
	Ederet or esset		ederent	or essent

INFINITIVE.

Edere or esse.

294. It serves as the passive of *facio* (I make), from which it borrows the *past participle*, and all the tenses for the *completed* actions (*perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect*) ¹¹⁴.

295. (a) *Eo* (I go) in all the tenses for the *completed* actions (*perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect*) is regular, and these tenses are declined like the fourth conjugation.

(b) The tenses for the *not-completed* actions (*present*, *imperfect*, and *future*) are the only irregular parts of the verb.

Indicative PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
eo, is, it.	imus, itis, eunt.

Subjunctive PRESENT.

<i>Indic. IMPERF.</i>	<i>Subj. IMPERF.</i>
ibam, ibas, &c.	irem, ires, &c.

Fut. ibo, ibis, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
2nd person, i, ito.	ite, itote.
3rd person, ito.	eunto.

114

INDICATIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

Not-completed actions.	Pres. fio. Imp. fieram. Fut. fieri.	fio, fieri.
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFITIVE.
	Pres. fieri. Imp. fierem.	fieri.

INDICATIVE.

Perf. factus sum. Pluperf. factus eram. Fut. perf. factus ero.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perf. factus erim. Pluperf. factus essem.

INFITIVE.

Part. factus. Perf. factum esse. Fut. factum iri.

GERUND.

cundi, cundo, cundum.

Part. present.

icens; Genitiv, cuntis.

Perfect tense is *ivi*. Supines, *itum, itu.*

QUESTIONS.

292. How is *edo* (to eat) conjugated? (Regularly, like the 3rd conj.) To what verb are some of its forms similar? (To those of *sum*.)—293. What form has *fiō* (I become or am made) for the pres. imp. and fut. tenses? (An active form regularly declined, like the 4th conj.)—294. To which verb does it serve as a passive? (To *facio*, I make.) What parts does *fiō* borrow from *facio*?—295. (a) What parts of *eo* (I go) are regular? (The tenses for the completed actions *perf.*, *plus-perf.*, and *fut. perf.*) (b) What are the irregular parts of *eo*? (Pres., imp., and fut. tenses.) Say the *present* indicative and subjunctive: the *imperfect* indicative and subjunctive: the *future*: the *imperative*: the *gerunds*: and the *present participle*. What is the *past* tense? What are the *supines*?

EXERCISE 33.

296. These words are continually found in sentences answering to each other; therefore, when one occurs, look for the other.

tot, so many; as many quot¹¹⁵, as (also how many; as many as).

tantus, so great quantus, as (also how great; how many; how much; as great as; such as).

talis, such qualis, as (also of what kind or manner; what).

idem, the same qui, us.

idem, as well idem, us.

¹¹⁵ *Quot* also means *every, each*, joined to the ablatives *annis, diebus, mensibus, &c.*; as, *quot annis*, *every year, yearly*; *quot mensibus*, *monthly*.

<i>tam</i> , as well	<i>quam</i> ¹¹⁶ , as.
<i>quam</i> , or { when	<i>tum</i> , then.
<i>cum</i> ,	
<i>tum</i> , { as well, at one time, now,	<i>tum</i> , { as. at another. now.
<i>prius</i> , { before, sooner, rather,	<i>quam</i> , { that. than. than.
<i>magis</i> , more	<i>quam</i> , than (<i>quam</i> is often omitted, and the <i>ablative</i> employed).

In Miltiade¹¹⁷ erat *cum* summa humanitas *tum* mira comitas. Quot homines sunt, tot causee fiunt. *Tantam*¹¹⁸ dimicationem viderunt, quanta nunquam fuit. *Talis* es, *qualis* te esse video. *Qualis* te prebuisti, *talem* te impertias. Omnia *prius* verbis experiri, *quam* armis sapientis est. *Eadem* est virtus *quam* in proavo. *Idem* mœstitudinem reprehendit, *idem* jocum. Expetuntur divitiae *cum* ad usus vitre necessarios *tum* ad perfruendas voluptates. *Quum* recte navigari poterit, *tum* naves.

297. Example.

Talis fiet, *qualis* est Caius.

Such he will become as is Caius.

Eng. constr. [He will become such as Caius is.]

-- I am a man *as well as* you. *As many* men *as* opinions. They saw *as great* (Note¹¹⁸) a contest *as* ever happened. I am become *such as* you. The enemy have the *same* power *as* we (have). *When* the enemy fled, *then* we returned home. *At one time* he was made dictator; *at another*, consul. Cæsar will

¹¹⁶ Before comparatives and superlatives, *tam*, the—*quam*, the; *as*, *Quam* maxime fit, *tam* pessime.
The more it is done, the worse (it is).

¹¹⁷ *Miltiades*, G. *-dis*, a celebrated Athenian general, the conqueror of the Persians at Marathon.

¹¹⁸ When any of the *declinable* words in the above list refer to different nouns, and depend on different verbs, they take the *gender*, *number*, and *case* the nouns and verbs they refer to require.

go to Rome rather than to Gaul. He loves reading (*pres. inf.*) more than writing. The queen will leave¹¹⁹ the city before that¹²⁰ the enemy returns. He reproved as well (his) sadness as (his) jesting.

LESSON 33.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Those verbs which are found only in the *third person singular* are called IMPERSONAL verbs, because they do not admit of a *personal* subject or *nominative*, such as *I, thou, he, we, you, they*, before them.

299. The *impersonals* generally take before them a *preposition* or a *neuter noun* answering to the English pronoun "it;" and the English *personal nominative* is put into the case the impersonal governs; as,

Eng. *I am-grieved.*

Lat. { *It grieves me.*
 { *Piget¹²¹ me.*

¹¹⁹ *Excedere* with *abl.*

¹²⁰ "That" is often omitted in English.

¹²¹ When *b, l, m, t, r, d, ūs** conclude a word,
 Short (") must the ending be *inferr'd*;
 But *ū, c, ā, n, ī**, with *ās*, and *ēs*,
 Long (") are reckoned, if you please.

And further,

A vowel before two consonants † is long;
A rule remember,—with this other,—
That every vowel is reckon'd short,
Whenever followed by another.

* These words following will impress the letters stronger in the memory,—*blister'd us—oceanic*.

† The consonants may be in different words: one at the *end* of one word, and the other at the *beginning* of the following.

GERUND.

eundi, eundo, eundum.

Part. present.

iens; Genitive, euntis.

* * * Perfect tense is *ivi*. Supines, *itum, itu.*

QUESTIONS.

292. How is *edo* (to eat) conjugated? (Regularly, like the 3rd conj.) To what verb are some of its forms similar? (To those of *sum*.)—293. What form has *fio* (I become or am made) for the pres. imp. and fut. tenses? (An active form regularly declined, like the 4th conj.)—294. To which verb does it serve as a passive? (To *facio*, I make.) What parts does *fio* borrow from *facio*?—295. (a) What parts of *eo* (I go) are regular? (The tenses for the completed actions *perf.*, *pluperf.*, and *fut. perf.*) (b) What are the irregular parts of *eo*? (Pres., imp., and fut. tenses.) Say the *present* indicative and subjunctive: the *imperfect* indicative and subjunctive: the *future*: the *imperative*: the *gerunds*: and the *present participle*. What is the *past* tense? What are the *supines*?

EXERCISE 33.

296. These words are continually found in sentences answering to each other; therefore, when one occurs, look for the other.

tot, so many; as many *quot*¹¹⁵, as (also how many; as many as).

tantus, so great *quantus*, as (also how great; how many; how much; as great as; such as).

talis, such *qualis*, as (also of what kind or manner; what).

idem, the same *qui*, as.

idem, as well *idem*, as.

¹¹⁵ *Quot* also means *every*, *each*, joined to the ablatives *annis*, *diebus*, *mensibus*, &c.; as, *quot annis*, every year, yearly; *quot mensibus*, monthly.

303. The rest will take a *dative* case ;
 An *accusative*, the transitives ;
 While *interest*, and *referit*, ablatives in *-ā* ;
 But *interest* often *genitives*.

QUESTIONS.

298. What are verbs *impersonal*? Why are they so called ?—
 299. What do these impersonals generally take before them ? Into what case is the English *nom.* put ?—300. Are other verbs used *impersonally*?—301. When must the *impersonal* verb be used ? (a) When the verb is followed in English by an *infinitive*, which may be used as its *nominative*? (b) When the English verb is not followed by an *infinitive*, what verb must be used ? (A *personal* verb.) What *final* letters make the vowel preceding *short*? (Note 1²¹.) What, *long*? What is a vowel before two consonants ? (Long.) When is a vowel *short*? (When before another vowel. Say note 1²¹, p. 123.)—302. What case do some *impersonals* require the person feeling to be in ? (*Accusative*.) What the *cause* or *object* of the feeling ? (*Genitive*.) Name these *impersonals*. (Notes 1²², 1²⁴, p. 124.)—303. What case do other impersonals take ? (*Dative*.) What, if they are *transitives*? (*Accusative*.) What case does *interest* require ?

Eng. *I am not only grieved at my folly, but also ashamed.*

Lat. *It grieves me not only of my folly, but also it shames (me).*

Lat. { *Me non solum piget stultitia mea, sed etiam pudet.*
 { *Me not only it grieves of folly my, but also it shames.*

[The person grieved is *me*, which is in the *accusative* ; and *my folly*, the *cause* of grief, is in the *genitive*.]

1²² The *cause* or *object* is often put in the *infinitive*, or into a sentence with *quod* or some other relative ; as,

Eng. *I repent of offending you.*

Lat. *It repents me that I have offended you.*

Lat. { *Penitit me, quod te offendit.*
 { *It repents me, that thee I have offended.*

Eng. *I am not ashamed of having done this.*

Lat. *It shames me not to-have-done this.*

Lat. { *Non pudet me hoc fecisse.*
 { *Not it shames me this to have done.*

Particularly with *debet*, *dedebet*, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oparet*.

(The *genitive*, or the personal pronoun adjectives in the *feminine ablative*, as *meā*, *tūā*, *sūā*, &c.) What does *refert* require? [The *fem. ablatives meā*, *tūā*, *sūā*, &c.; seldom a *gen.* (307, note ¹²⁸.)] In what is the *cause* or *object* sometimes put? (Note ¹²⁸.)

EXERCISE 34.

304. <i>Miseret,</i>	, <i>Miserescit,</i> } <i>Miseretur,</i> }	it pities.
<i>Piget,</i>		it grieves.
<i>Pudet,</i>		it shames.
<i>Pænitet,</i>		it repents.
<i>Tædet,</i>		it wearis, or irketh.
<i>Decet,</i>		it becomes, } followed by <i>acc.</i> of person
<i>Dedecet,</i>		it misbecomes, } and <i>infinitive.</i>
<i>Delectat,</i>		it delights.

[In translating, take the *acc.* as if the *nom.* to the verb.]

Me *piget* stultitiae tuae. *Pænitet* me quod illos offendit; non *pænitet* me quantum profecerim. *Miseret* me populi. *Pudet* te ignorantiae tuae. Socratem non *puduit* fati, se multas res nescire. *Miseret* me tui. *Tædet* me vitæ. Me civitatis morum *piget*, *tædet*que. Eos ineptiarum *pænitet*. *Pænitibat* me peccati. *Miseret* te aliorum, tui te nec *miseret* nec *pudet*. Te id *puduit* facere. Non *decet* te rixari.

305. Example.

Lat. { *Miseret* me calamitatis tute.
 { *It pities me of misfortune your.*

Eng. constr. [*I pity your misfortune.*]

I pity (302) you (it pities me of you). He was ashamed of his folly. You are weary of life. I am grieved to confess that I am ignorant-of (know not) many things. I am delighted (301, a) to see you. You will-repent-of your folly. *It-does not become* a man to-scold. It misbecomes a youth to be idle during-learning [*inter* and *ger.* (231)]. I am ashamed of you and your ignorance. I am weary of study.

He was ashamed of his delay. He has *too much* (138) money, and *very little* wisdom. He remained at Rome *some time*. I shall go to Rome to hear (160) Cicero.

LESSON 34.

IMPERSONALS (*continued*).

306. Repeat the lines (303) respecting the other *impersonals*.

The rest will take a *dative* case,
An *accusative* the *transitivs*;
While *interest* and *refert*, *ablatives* in *-ā*;
But *interest* often *genitives*.

307. *Interest* and *refert* take after them a *genitive* of the person whose interest is concerned, or these *feminine ablatives* of the pronouns instead, viz.,

*mei, tuā, suā, nostrā, restrā*¹²⁶.

308. The thing in which the interest is involved follows in the *accusative* and *infinitive*, or with *ut* (or some other particle) and the *subjunctive*; as,

It is to my interest that you are diligent.

Meū interest te esse diligentem.

or ut diligens sis.

or utrum diligens sis, necne (or not).

*¹²⁶ *Refert* seldom is followed by a *genitive*, and is oftener used in the phrases, *Quid refert?* what is the matter? what difference does it make? and *nihil refert*; it makes no difference; &c.

¹²⁶ Some authors consider these pronouns as *neuter plural nominatives*; others, as *ablatives feminine*, agreeing with some such word as *causa* or *gratia* understood.

EXERCISE 35.

309. *Impersonals* followed by a *dative*.

<i>Libet,</i>	it pleases.
<i>Licet,</i>	{ it is lawful, (<i>I may, thou mayest, &c.</i>) it is permitted.
<i>Liquet,</i>	it is clear, manifest, evident.
<i>Convenit,</i>	it suits, it is fitting, it becomes.
<i>Accidit,</i>	{ it happens, { followed generally by <i>ut</i> and
<i>Contingit,</i>	it is of importance, it is the interest of.
<i>Erenit,</i>	a subjunctive.
<i>Expedit,</i>	it is expedient.

And others of like signification.

With gen. *Interest*, { it concerns, it is important,
Refert, { it is of importance, it is the interest of.

310. *May* and *might* can thus be conjugated with *licet*:

PRES. *Mihi legere licet*, I may read.
Tibi legere licet, thou mayest read.
Illi legere licet, he may read.
Nobis legere licet, we may read.
Vobis legere licet, you may read.
Illi legere licet, they may read.

PRES. *Mihi legere licuit*, I might have read.
Tibi legere licuit, thou mightest have read¹²⁷.
&c. &c.

QUESTIONS.

307. What do *interest* and *refert* take after them? How is the *thing* expressed in which the interest is involved? (308.) How can *may* and *might* be expressed and conjugated? (310.) How is *past* time expressed?

¹²⁷ In expressing *ability*, *will*, *liberty*, *duty*, &c., in *present* time, the English employs both verbs in the *present tense*, and so also does the Latin; as,

Mihi legere licet, I may go.

When *past* time is to be expressed, the English employs both verbs in the *past tense*; the Latin does not: it puts the governing verb only in the *past tense*, and the infinitive remains in the *present*; as,

Mihi legere licuit, I might have read.

*¹ Take the *dative first*, as if a personal *nominative*.

Non libert mihi committere praelium. Expedit rei-publicor. Licet mihi vera referre. Licet nemini pccare. Non critis homini contingit adire Corinthum. Inter omnia vera dicere. Nostr referit recte facere. Magni¹²² interest mea hoc scribere. Caesar dicere solebat non tam sua quam reipublica interessu-uti (that) salvis esset. Liquer mihi, te esse salvum. Referit non pluris quam tu.

311. Example.

*Patris magni interest, me
To (my) father it is of great importance that I should
discere.
Learn.*

*It-is-the-interest of all to-do right. It-is-of great
importance to me that (160) I see you to-day. I may
go (310) to Rome. It is expedient for me to write a
letter. It suits us to do this, rather than that.
What difference does it make? (308 *¹) It makes
no difference. I might have read the letter. It is of
great importance to all (men) to speak the truth
[true (things)]. It was of much importance to me to
hear his discourse properly. It would have been of
importance not so much to himself as to the republic.
You may send a messenger to Corinth. It is of no
importance.*

LESSON 35.

PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE.

312. *Ad*, to, at.

*Adversum, } against, towards (but *erga* more commonly
Adversus, } in sense of towards).*

Ante, before.

Apud, at, with, in the house of, in the writings of.

¹²² The degree of interest or importance is expressed by the genitive adjectives of price and value (see 100), or by the neutrals of adjectives.

Circa, } about, around, { *circa* and *circum*, with
Circum, } time and place; *circiter*,
Circiter, } with time.

Cis, { on this side.
Citra, {

Contra, against (of place, and hostility).

Erga, towards (of the affections).

Extra, without, beyond.

Infra, beneath.

Inter, between, among, during (*mutually with se*).

Intra, within (opposed to *extra*).

Juxta, beside, near.

(Before comparatives.)

The—the { *quanto—tanto*.
 { *quo—eo*.

Much (better), *multo* (melior).

How much (better), *quanto* (melior).

So much (better), *tanto* (melior).

EXERCISE 36.

Contra leges turpe est facere. Milites inter hostes aliquando dormient. Intra viginti dies consul Romam veniet. Regina infra oppidum ambulavit. Hostes vidi extra urbem. Juxta regem liberi dormiverunt. Cis montem hodie venit. Magni testimaris apud bonos viros. Mortuus est ante Christum. Caesar ad sylvam erat.

313. Example. Circiter meridiem veni Romam.
About noon I came to Rome.

Within ten days I shall-go into Africa. We will walk between the enemy, on-this-side the wood. I cannot do any-thing against the state. The ambassador will be with me to-morrow. Do nothing against the gods. They saw not the fires around (their) houses. There was war many years between the Samnites and the Romans. I saw the light before the house.

LESSON 36.

PREPOSITIONS (*continued*).

(Governing the Accusative.)

314. *Ob*, on account of, before (with *oculi*).
Pens, in the power of, possession of.
Per, through, during, by (in adjurations).
Pone, behind (of place, but *post* is more common).
Post, after, behind.
Prater, beside, beyond, except.
Prope, near (often used with *a* or *ab*).
Propter, near, on account of, by means of.
Secundum, according to, alone, after (next in degree).
Supra, above.
Subter, under (very seldom with *abl*).
Trans, across, on the other side.
Versus, towards (put after its noun, and often joined with *ad* or *in*).
Ultra, beyond.
Usque, as far as (used only with *ab*, *ad*, *in*, *sub*; properly it is an *adv.*).
Quam maximum, as much as possible.
Quam plurimum, as many as possible.
Quam minimum, as little as possible.

(*Quam* before *superlatives* strengthens their meaning.)

EXERCISE 37.

Ob eam rem Antonius minimum temporis amisit.
Rex magno cum exercitu *per* totam Italiam ibat.
Pens regem omnis est potestas. *Per* Jovem deosque juro. *Prater* ceteros mihi subvenisti. *Anicitia propter* se expectenda. *Supra* caput ejus hoc recte posuerunt. *A*gyptum *versus* cives *quam plurimi* navigaverunt. *Secundum* (*after*) deos homines hominibus maxime utiles esse possunt. *Usque ad* mare mater mea venit. *Ultra* montes, ut librum ejus legam, ibo.

315. Example.

Animus *per* somnum curis vacuus est.
 The mind *during* sleep from cares free is.
 Eng. constr. [*The mind during sleep is free from cares.*]

I am about to see (205) the games *near* the city. During the same time, the enemy fled *behind* the wood. *On-account-of* that letter, we must write *as little-as-possible*. He values the book at a-great-price *on-account-of* his mother. We shall sail *across* the sea, *towards* Corinth. He is strong *above* measure, yet he is weary of his labour. It is of great importance to us to go with the king *as-far-as* Rome.

LESSON 37.

PREPOSITIONS (*continued*).

(Governing the Ablative.)

316. *A, ab, abs*, from, by, { *a* before consonants.
ab before vowels.
abs before *t* and *qu*.
Absque, without (chiefly used by comic writers).
Clam, without the knowledge of.
Coram, in the presence of.
Cum, with.
De, concerning, of, from.
E, ex, from, out of, { *e* before consonants.
ex before vowels and consonants.

De industria, on purpose.

De integro, afresh.

De facie, by sight.

Ex adverso, opposite.

Ex improviso, suddenly.

Ex tempore, off-hand.

I ought to have done (this). *Me (hoc) facere oportuit.*
Thou oughtest to have done *Te (hoc) facere oportuit.*
this.

EXERCISE 38.

Nullam abs te epistolam accepi. Me a pueru hoc facere oportuit. Hoc clam patre non facere possum.

Dicam *ex* animo, quod *de* republica sentio. Vincimus cum *a* militibus tum *a* pecunia. Novi cum *de* facie. Me hoc facere *de* *integro* oportet. Orationem *ex* *tempore* non legere possum.

317. Example.

Ab initio epistolam ejus legam.
From the beginning letter his I will read.
 Eng. constr. [*I will read his letter from the beginning.*]

A man is not wise *from* (his) youth. I remember this *from* a boy. The queen cannot do this *without the knowledge of* the king. I shall remain at Carthage day *after* (ex) day. One *of* (e) the consuls inquired *of* (de) Pompey. When I was a boy (*ab*. *abs.*) he heard this *from* his father *concerning* my age.

LESSON 38.

PREPOSITIONS (*continued*).

(Governing the Ablative.)

318. *Prae*, before¹, in comparison with² (often *adverbially*).
Prae, before¹ (*of place*), for² (*instead of*), agreeably to³.
Sine, without.
Tenus, as far as (follows its case, and is found sometimes with a genitive).

These *adverbs* also are used with an *ablative*.

Palam, openly (often without a case).
Procul, afar off (sometimes followed by *ab*).
Simul, at the same time, as soon as (sometimes followed by *cum*).

EXERCISE 39.

I *prae*¹, sequar. Omnes *prae*² illo parvi sunt. Non geri bellum oportuit *pro*³ prudentia. *Pro*¹ oppido hostes steterunt. Neptunum *pro*³ mari appellare solent.

Priscus non *sine causâ* numerum senatorum duplicavit. Cæsar hostes sylvâ *tenus* vicit. *Palam* populo rem dixit. Hodie it *procul ab urbe*.

319. Example.

Ejus filius sine curâ pauca discit.
His son without care few things learns.

Cæsar, while the enemy was sleeping, led a large army *before* the town. You may go *before*, I will follow *afar off*. Your daughter can go into the city in-the-evening *without* any fear. I did this *openly*. We will walk *as-soon-as* you *as-far-as* the sea. All men are poor *in-comparison-with* you.

LESSON 39.

PREPOSITIONS (*continued*).

(Governing Acc. and Abl.)

320. *In*, with *acc.*, into¹, towards², against³.

In, with *abl.*, in¹ (*time and place*), upon² (*of rest*), among³.

Sub, with *acc.*, under¹ (*motion to; subjection, with verbs of motion*), just after², about³.

Sub, with *abl.*, under¹ (*at rest; subjection, denoting the state*), at the very time², near³, close under⁴.

Super, with *acc.*, above¹, over², beyond³.

Super, with *abl.*, upon¹, concerning².

In diem vivere, to live for the day.

** Many *prepositions* are used as *adverbs*.

EXERCISE 40.

Librum simul posuit *in*³ mensâ. Urbs erat *sub*¹ imperio populi Romani. Regina sub umbra ambulavit *clam* rege. Legati *sub*¹ urbem missi sunt. Vivimus semper *sub*¹ lege. Usum est *in*³ poetis. Hac *super* re scribam. Sunt qui aliis noceant, ut *in*² alios liberales sint. Ibo *in* urbem ut fratrem videam.

321. Example.

Antonius maximo odio ferebatur in
Antony the greatest hatred boro against
 Ciceronem.
Cicero.

We will go *into* the city at the same time. He was buried *in* the town *under* (his) house. Caesar wrote often to the senators *concerning* the war. Boys are *under* their masters, we all are *under* the king and the laws. We shall leave Rome *about* noon. The king was buried *beneath* the earth *far-from* the city.

LESSON 40.

ADVERBS AND CONJUNCTIONS.

322. Adverbs in *-e* and *-ter* enjoy comparison like adjectives:—the comparative is in *-ius*, and the superlative in *-issimè*.

323. These *conjunctions* answer to each other:—

<i>Et—et,</i>	{	both—and.
<i>Et—que,</i>		
<i>Que—que,</i>	{	neither—nor.
<i>Nec—nec,</i>		
<i>Neque—neque,</i>	{	either—or.
<i>Aut—aut,</i>		
<i>Vel—vel,</i>	{	whether—or.
<i>Sic—sic,</i>		
<i>Seu—seu,</i>		

324. “*That*” after verbs of fearing, mark by “*ne;*”
 “*That not,*” by “*ut*” alone will noted be.

325. “*But that*” after negatives is “*quin,*”
 And after “*doubt,*” and to “*deny,*”
 And *interrogatives* expecting *yes* require
 A “*nonno;*”—while a “*num*” will *no* imply.

(Phrases followed by *quin* and the subjunctive.)

Non dubitare, not to doubt.

Non est dubium, there is no doubt.

Nihil prætermillere, to omit nothing.
Fieri non potest, it cannot be.
Negari non potest, it cannot be denied.
Facere non possum, or *non possum*, I cannot.
Temperare mihi non possum, I cannot refrain from.
Non recusare, not to refuse.
Vereor ne scribat, *I fear that he will write.*
Vereor ut scribat, *I fear that he will not write.*
Investigare, to investigate.

EXERCISE 41.

326. *Nihil tam difficile est, quin querendo possit investigari. Nihil prætermisi, quin hoc recte facerem. Temperare mihi non possum quin matrem meam videam. Facere non potest quin sentiat. Vereor no domum redeat. Vereor ut in urbe sepelietur. Non est dubium, quin Cæsar hostes facile vineat. Non dubitavit quin regem videret. Nonne regina valet? Num consul venit Romanum?*

327. Example.

*Negari non potest quin virtus præstantior
 Be denied not it can but that virtus more excellent
 sit auro.
 is (than) gold.*

Eng. constr. [*It cannot be denied but-that virtus is more excellent than gold.*]

*He has omitted nothing that he may return to Rome.
 I fear that he will be driven-from the city. It cannot
 be denied that Romulus was more warlike than Numa.
 I fear, the king will be killed in the Latin war. I
 cannot but remain at Rome a few days. He fears that
 he will not return to-morrow. I do not doubt but-that
 he will write. Have you not written to your father?
 (Yes.) Have you read the book? (No.) I cannot
 refrain from going into the country. I will not refuse
 to stay.*

QUESTIONS RECAPITULATORY.

(HIGHLY NECESSARY TO BE COMMITTED TO MEMORY.)

1. **Where** does the *genitive case* stand?

Before the governing noun, except when that noun is emphatic.
(13, a. b.)

2. **What** is the place of the *Accusative*?

In English after the verb, in Latin before the verb. (40.)

3. **How** should words *in opposition* be placed?

Either as close together, or as far apart as possible. (52.)

4. **Of** what gender are nouns in *ā* of the 1st declension?

*Nouns in *ā* of the first declension are feminine, except the names and offices of men.* (30.)

5. **Of** what gender are the terminations *us*, *er*, and *um* of the 2nd declension?

us and er are masculine; and um is neuter. (55.)

6. **How** do *adjectives* agree with the nouns they qualify?

They must be in the same gender, number, and case. (64.)

7. **Where** do *adjectives* generally stand?

Before their nouns.

8. **Where** do *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, and some few other monosyllables stand?

After their nouns. (67.)

9. **When** a *genitive* is governed by a noun having an adjective with it, where does the genitive stand?

Between the adjective and the noun. (69.)

10. What are the *genders* of the terminations of the third declension?

There are exceptions we confess;
But *masculine* end in *er*, *or*, *os*, and *o*,
And nouns *increasing* ending *es*.

But every other word in *s*,
A few in *us*, with *is*, *go*, and *do*,
And *x*, are *female* if you please.

But *ar*, *ur*, *us*, and other vowels than *o*;
With *c*, *l*, *n*, and *t*, are *neuter* though. (74.)

11. What do adjectives *without* a noun agree with?

If *masculine* they agree with *man* understood; if *feminine* they agree with *woman* understood; and if *neuter* they agree with *thing* understood. (81.)

12. Of what gender are the nouns in *us* and *u* of the fourth declension?

Those in *us* are mostly *masculine*; those in *u* are *neuter*. (88, 89.)

13. How may the infinitive mood of a verb be used?

As a substantive of the *nominative* or *accusative* case, *neuter*; and may have adjectives to agree with them in the *neuter*. (95.)

14. When a preposition governs a *substantive* having an adjective with it, where do you place the *preposition*?

Between the *adjective* and the *substantive*. (99.)

15. How do adjectives form their comparative degree?

By adding to the root *ter* for masculine and feminine, and *ter* for the *neuter*. (103.)

16. How do adjectives form the *superlative* degree?

By adding to the root *-issimus*, *a*, *um*. (104.)

17. How is *than* expressed after the comparative?

(a) *Than* is omitted when the person or thing compared *possesses* a portion of the same quality, and the noun following is to be in the *ablative*. (110, a.)

(b) *Than* is expressed by *quam*, and the persons or things compared are in *like* cases when they do not possess any portion of the quality. (110, b.)

18. In forming the *perfect* of the third conjugation, how are the *p* sounds and *k* sounds affected?

In adding *s* to form the *perfect* tenses the *p* sounds (*b* and *p*) become *p*; and the *k* sounds (*c*, *g*, *cl*, *qu*, or *k*) with *s* coalesce into *x*. (120, b. c.)

19. When are *sui* and *suus* used?

When they refer to the *nominative* of the verb. (134.)

20. What do adjectives in the *neuter* gender without a substantive, and expressing *part* of any quantity, require?

The *neut* following in the *genitive*. (137.)

21. Is the *nominative* of pronouns always expressed?

Only when *emphasis* is required. (142, b.)

22. How are *not* and *nor* expressed with *imperatives*?

To all *imperatives* allot

A "ne" whenever there's a "not."

Whenever "nor" occurs, employ

A "nere," to be right, my boy.—(147.)

23. How is point of *time*, *when*, expressed?

In the *ablatice* without a preposition. (150.)

24. How is *how long* expressed?

In the *accusative* without a preposition. (150.)

25. In what case are the names of *towns* and the place *where* put?

If of the first or second declension, and singular, in the *genitive*—
plurals and other declensions, in the *ablatice*. (151, a. b.)

26. What case follows verbs of *motion*?

The *accusative*: towns and small islands omit the preposition; but
before countries, put *in* or *ad*. (151. c.)

27. In what case is the place *from* or *whence*?

In the *ablatice*. (152.)

28. With what must the *relative* agree?

With its *antecedent* in *gender*, *number*, and *person*. (158.)

29. How is the *case* of the *relative* governed?

Generally by some word in its own sentence (159); and when no
nominative comes between the *relative* and the *verb*, the *relative*
is nominative to the *verb*. (Note 30.)

30. What case do adjectives expressing the various
affections of the mind govern?

The *genitive*. (Note 31.)

31. What is the particular sequence of tenses in
the *subjunctive mood*?

The *present* *subjunctive* follows the *present* and *future* *indicative*;
the *imperfect* *subjunctive* follows the *past tenses* *indicative*.
(163.)

32. What do *unus* and *solus* with *qui* require?

Unus and *solus* joined with *qui*,
Require *subjunctive*, by-the-by. (Note 37.)

33. What does *multus* followed by another adjective require?

Et, though not so in English. (Note 39.)

34. After parts of the verb *to be*, how are the words *part*, *duty*, *mark*, *business*, *character*, &c. expressed?

They are *omitted* in Latin, and the noun following is in the genitive. (175.)

35. How is *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *our*, *your*, then expressed after *duty*, *mark*, *business*, &c.?

By the *neuter gender nominative* of the adjective pronouns. (183.)

36. In what case do adjectives express the *cost*, *price*, or *value*?

In the *genitive*. (189, a.)

37. In what case do substantives express the *cost*, *price*, or *value*?

In the *ablative*. (189, b.)

38. What follows *know*, *think*, *feel*, *hear*, *say*, and *see*?

After *know*, *think*, *feel*, *hear*, *say*, and *see*,
An *accusative* with its *infinitive* must be;
The English "that" beyond a doubt,
You must, in Latin, then *leave out*. (191.)

39. Do participles admit of *comparison*?

Only when they do not relate to *time*, and they then also take a *genitive* case. (204.)

40. How is length of time before the present moment expressed?

By *abhinc* with the *accusative* for *duration* of time, and with *ablative* for *point* of time. (208, a.)

41. When a noun and participle are independent of any other word in a sentence, in what case are they put?

In the *ablative*; which is called the *ablative absolute*. (216.)

42. What does "to" after a verb of *motion* denote?

The noun following to be in the *accusative* case. (151.)

43. When does the participle in *-dus* imply *duty* or *necessity*?

When declined with the verb *sum*. (221.)

44. How is *duty* or *necessity* expressed?

By the participle in *-dus* *agreeing* with the subject; or in the *neuter* gender with the subject in the *dative*. (222.)

45. Go through a *declension* with the participle in *-dus* in *agreement*. (See 219.)46. Go through a *tense* with the participle in *-dus* in the *neuter*, with the subject in the *dative*. (See 222.)47. How is difference of *time* expressed when using the *part.* in *-dus*?

By the *tenses* of *sum*. (220.)

48. How is *cum* (with) placed with the personal pronouns and with monosyllables?

Joined to the end as one word, as *me cum*, *te cum*, &c. (Note 66.)

49. What may the gerunds be considered?

As the *genitive*, *dative*, *ablative*, and *accusative* cases *neuter* of the part. in *-dus*. (229.)

50. When are the *gerunds* and *part.* in *-dus* convertible?

When the verb is *transitive*. (230.)

51. Decline the *gerunds* with the aid of the *infinitive* as a noun. (See 231.)52. How is a *purpose* expressed in Latin?

Five different ways.

1st. By *ut* with the *subjunctive*. (160.)

2nd. By the *supine* in *um*. (107.)

3rd. By the *future* in *-rus*. (206.)

4th. By *causa* or *gratia*, with a *gerund* in *di*. (233.)

5th. By a *gerund* in *dum* governed by *ad*. (Note 67.)

53. What is the *nominative* case to a *passive* verb?

That which is the *accusative* if it were *active*, and no other (Note 70), and the *nominative* is then put into the *ablative*.

54. If an *active* verb governs any other case than the *accusative*, how is it made *passive*?

It then must take an *impersonal* form in the *passive*. (Note 70.)

55. In what case is the *agent* of an active verb expressed in the *passive*?

In the *ablative*: *living beings* requiring the preposition *a* or *ab*. (237.)

56. In what case is the *instrument* of an action expressed?

In the *ablative* without a *preposition*. (238.)

57. In what case is the *manner* of an action expressed?

In the *ablative*, with the preposition *cum*. (239.)

58. When an *adjective* is joined with a noun governed by a *preposition*, what is the place of the preposition?

Between the adjective and the noun. (239, b.)

59. When two or more nouns are coupled by *and*, what do they require?

A *verb plural*. (Note 73.)

60. When several words are joined by *and*, is the conjunction *et* repeated?

Et may be omitted entirely, or it must be repeated to all. (Note 78.)

61. How is a *purpose* expressed after verbs of *commanding, advising, asking, striving*?

In *ut* and a subjunctive
True correctness lies
To note a *purpose* after *ask, command,*
To *strive* and to *advise*.

62. What *mood* usually follows *impersonal forms*?
The *accusative* and *infinitive*, which may be considered as its *subject*.

63. What are the exceptions?

These *impersonals*:

Restat, accidit, and fit,
With very often *sequitur*;
Contingit, reliquum est, and evenit,
Which ever will an *ut* prefer.

64. In what case are the adjectives of *price* and *value* sometimes put?

In the *ablative*, to agree with *pretio* understood. (Note * p. 100.)

65. What cases do *deponent verbs* govern?

With to *forget*—to *remember*—*pity*—*place*,
The noun that follows in the *gen'itive* case;
But to *enjoy, discharge*, and also *use*,
You must an *ablative* introduce. (263.)

66. What case does *sum* require?

Esse, when it means *to have*, will place
The person in the *dative* case;
The compounds too of *sum* a *dative* find,
Excepting *possum*, bear in mind. (269.)

67. When *will* and *would* imply mere *futurity*,
how are they expressed?

By a tense of the following verb. (277.)

68. When they imply *inclination*, or when the sentence is *absolute* and *independent*, how are they expressed?

By a tense of *volo*, with the verb following in the *infinitive*. (277, b.)

69. When *can* and *could* are in sentences *absolute* and *independent*, how are they expressed?

By a tense of *possum* with the following verb in the *infinitive*. (278.)

70. How is "*that—not*" with a *purpose* expressed?

"*That—not*" with a *purpose* must not be:
" *Ut*" with a negative, but only " *ne.*" (279.)

71. How are "*so*" and "*such*" translated when preceding "*that?*"

"*So*" and "*such*" preceding "*that*,"
A *consequence* relate;
By *ut* with the *subjunctive* then
This *consequence* translate. (287.)

72. How are *negatives* with a *consequence* expressed?

When *negatives* attend a *consequence*,
" *That*" still express by " *ut*;"
For " *not*," or English *negative*, you then
A Latin *negative* must put. (288.)

73. How are *negatives* with a *purpose* expressed?

When *negatives* attend a *purpose*,
Remember, " *ut*" will be,
With the negative omitted,
Converted into " *ne.*" (289.)

74. What is the *quantity* of the *final syllables* of words?

When *b*, *l*, *īs*, *t*, *r*, *d*, *us*, conclude a word,
Short (') must the ending be inferred;
But *ōs*, *c*, *ā*, *n*, *ī*, with *ās* and *ēs*,
Long (") are reckoned, if you please. (Note 121.)

75. What is the quantity of the middle syllables?

A vowel before two consonants is *long*,
A rule remember—with this other:—
That every vowel is reckoned *short*,
Whenever followed by another. (Note 121.)

76. What cases do *impersonals* require?

Miseret, and these impersonals require,
Beginning *pi-*; *pu-*; *pa-*; and *ta-*;
The *person* *feeling* in the *accusative*,
And in the *genitive* the *cause* to be. (302.)
The rest will take a *dative* case;
An *accusative* the *transitives*;
While *interest* and *refert*, *ablatives* in *-d*,
But *interest* often *genitives*. (306.)

77. Conjugate "may read," and "might read," with *licet*. (See 310.)

78. How is the degree of *interest* or *importance* expressed with *interest* and *refert*?

By the *genitive* adjectives of *price* and *value* (see 190), or by the *neuters* of adjectives.

79. Repeat the *prepositions* governing the *accusative*. (See 312. 314.)

80. Repeat the *prepositions* governing the *ablative*. (See 316. 318.)

81. Repeat the *prepositions* governing the *accusative* and *ablative*. (See 320.)

82. How are "that" and "that not" after verbs of fearing expressed?

"That" after verbs of fearing mark by "ne;"
"That not," by "ut" alone, will noted be. (324.)

83. How is "but that" expressed after *negative*! and verbs of *doubting* and *denying*?

"But that," after negatives is "quin,"
And after "doubt," and to "deny;"
And *interrogatives* expecting *yes* require
A "nonne;"—while a "num" will *no* imply. (325.)

INDEX I.

LATIN.

A.

A, ab, abs, *prep.*, *from*, *by* (with *abl.*); *a* before consonants, *ab* before vowels, *abs* before *t* and *qu.*
abunde, *adv.*, *plenty*.
accidit, *tr. pers. verb.*, *it happens*.
accipere-cepi-plum, *to receive*.
ad, *prep.*, *to*, *at* (with *acc.*).
adhibere-ui-litum, *to show*, *exhibit*.
adire-ivi, *to go to*, *approach*.
administrare, *to manage*.
admirare, *to admire*.
adolescens-nti, *m.* *a young man*.
adolescentia-re, *f.* *youth*.
adversum { *prep.*, *against* (with *adversus* { *acc.*}).
adficare, *to build*.
agre, *adv.*, *with difficulty*.
assimilare, *to value*, *reckon*, *esteem*.
etas-atis, *f.* *age*.
Africa-cx, *f.* *Africa*.
agere, *egi*, *actum*, *to do*.
alere-ui-litum, *to nourish*, *improve*.
aliquantus-a-um, *very much*.
aliquis-qua-quid, *or quod*, *one*, *any*,
some, *some one*.
alius, *alius*, *allud*, *one*, *another*.
illus — *illus*, *one* — *another*.
alter-ter-a-terum, *another*.
alter — *alter*, *one* — *the other*.
amabilis-e, *adj.*, *amiable*.
amare-avi-atum, *to love*.
ambulare, *to walk*.

amicitia-re, *f.* *friendship*.
amicus-i, *a friend*.
amicus-a-um, *adj.*, *friendly*.
amittere-isi-lissum, *to lose*.
anima-re, *f.* *the soul*.
animus-i, *m.* *the mind* (sentiments and passions).
annus-i, *m.* *a year*.
ante, *prep.*, *before* (with *acc.*).
Antonius-i, *m.* *Anthony*, *a noble Roman*.
apparere-ui-litum, *to appear*, *be visible*.
apud, *prep.*, *at*, *with*, *in the house of* (with *acc.*).
argentum-i, *n.* *silver*.
argenteus-a-um, *adj.*, *of silver*.
arma-orum, *pl. n.* *arms*.
aspicere-exi-ectum, *to behold*, *see*.
Athene-arum, *pl. n.* *Athens*.
auctoritas-atis, *f.* *authority*.
audacia-re, *f.* *boldness*.
audire-ivi-litum, *to hear*.
augere-uxi-ctum, *to increase*.
aureus-a-um, *adj.*, *golden*.
aurum-i, *n.* *gold*.
autem, *conj.*, *but* (169).
auxillium-i, *n.* *assistance*.

B.

beatus-a-um, *adj.*, *happy*.
bellum-i, *n.* *war*.
bene, *adv.*, *well*.

beneficium, *n. kindness.*
bonus-a-um, *adj., good.*
brevis-e, *adj., short, brief.*
Britannus-i, *m. a Briton.*

C.

Cæsar-īris, *m. Caesar.*
cassus-a-um, *pl., killed, slain.*
Caius-i, *m. a Roman name.*
canis-is, *a dog.*
caro, carnis, *flesh.*
Carthago-gīnis, *Carthage.*
carus-a-um, *dear, precious.*
catena-e, *f. a chain.*
causa-e, *f. a cause.*
cedere, cessi, cessum, *to yield up*
(note 56).

celeritas-atis, *f. celerity, activity.*
cernere, crevi, crelum, *to perceive.*
certiore facere, *to inform.*

charta-e, *f. paper.*

Christus-i, *m. Christ.*

Cicero-ōnis, *m. Cicero.*

circa } *prep., about (with acc.).*
circum } *prep., about (with acc.).*

circus-i, *m. a circus.*

cis, citra, *prep., on this side (with*
acc.).

civis-is, *a citizen.*

Cleopatra-e, *Cleopatra, a queen of*
Egypt.

cœlum-i, *heaven.*

cogitare, *to think.*

collocare, *to place.*

comitas-ātis, *f. politeness, courteous-*
ness.

commeatus-ūs, *provisions.*

committere prælium, *to fight, to en-*
gage (literally, to commence a
battle).

commodus-a-um, *adj., convenient.*
(commoda-orum, *pl. n. things con-*
venient, necessary.)

concedere, cessi, cessum, *to grant*
(note 56).

conditio-onis, *f. condition.*

confiare, *to bring, make, blow to-*
gether.

conglutinatio-onis, *f. cement.*
con junctio-onis, *f. union.*
conscientia-e, *f. conscience.*
con servare, *to preserve, save.*
con silium-i, *counsel, design.*
con stat, *it is an allowed fact.*
con sul-lis, *m. consul.*
con tingit, *imp., it happens.*
con venit, *imp., it suits, it is fitting.*
Corinthus-i, *Corinth.*
corona-m, *f. a crown.*
corpus-ōris, *n. a body.*
cras, *adv., to-morrow.*
cru deli ter, *adv., cruelly.*
cum, *prep., with (with abl.).*
cum — tum, *as well — as.*
cunctatio-ōnis, *f. delay.*
cura-e, *f. care.*
Curio-ōnis, *m. a Roman (199).*
curvus-ūs, *m. a chariot.*

D.

dare, dedi, datum, *to give.*
— poenas, *to make atonement,*
give satisfaction (with the crime
in the genitive).
Davus-i, *m. a man's name in Te-*
rence.
de, *prep., of, concerning (with abl.).*
— facie, *by sight.*
— improviso, *unawares.*
— industriæ, *on purpose.*
— integro, *afresh.*
debēre-ui-latum, *to owe.*
debet, *imp., it ought.*
decem, *indecl., ten.*
decemviri-ōrum, *pl., the decemvirs*
(ten Roman magistrates).

de cet, *imp., it becomes.*

dedecet, *imp., it misbecomes.*

de esse, *to be wanting, fail.*

defendere-di-nsum, *to defend.*

delectare, *to delight.*

delectat, *imp., it delights.*

delere-evi-etum, *to blot out, destroy.*

describere-pai-ptum, *to describe,*

divide, arrange.

Deus-i, *m. God.*

dicere, dixi, dictum, *to say, tell.*

dictator-ōris, <i>m. a dictator.</i>	etiam, <i>conj.</i> , <i>also.</i>
dies-ei, <i>m. and f. a day.</i>	etiam atque etiam, <i>again and again.</i>
difficilis-e, <i>adj.</i> , <i>difficult.</i>	Europa-æ, <i>f. Europe.</i>
difficultas-atis, <i>f. difficulty.</i>	evenit, <i>imp.</i> , <i>it happens.</i>
dignus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>worthy.</i>	ex, <i>prep.</i> , <i>out of, from</i> (with <i>abl.</i>).
diligentia-æ, <i>f. diligence.</i>	— adverso, <i>opposite.</i>
dimicare, <i>to fight.</i>	— improviso, <i>suddenly, unawares.</i>
diminatio-ōnis, <i>f. combat, dispute.</i>	— tempore, <i>off hand.</i>
dimittere-misi-issum, <i>to dismiss.</i>	excellētissime, <i>adv. sup.</i> , <i>most excellently.</i>
discere, didici, <i>to learn.</i>	exceptus-a-um, <i>pt.</i> , <i>excepted.</i>
divellere-elli, and -ulsi-ulsum, <i>to tear asunder.</i>	excruciare, <i>to torture.</i>
divitiae-arum, <i>f. riches.</i>	excusare, <i>to excuse.</i>
docere-ui-ctum, <i>to teach.</i>	exercitus-ūs, <i>m. an army.</i>
Dolabella-æ, <i>a person's name.</i>	exire-ivi-itum, <i>to go out, depart.</i>
dolere-ui-itum, <i>to grieve.</i>	exordium-i, <i>a beginning.</i>
dolor-ōris, <i>m. pain.</i>	expedit, <i>imp.</i> , <i>it is expedient.</i>
dominus-i, <i>m. a lord, a master (who owns).</i>	expellere-ulsi-ulsum, <i>to drive out, expel.</i>
domus-i, and -ūs, <i>f. a house, home.</i>	experiri, <i>expertus, to try.</i>
donare, <i>to present.</i>	expetere-ivi-itum, <i>to seek for.</i>
dormire-ivi, <i>to sleep.</i>	extremus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>last, end of.</i>
ducere, duxi-ctum, <i>to lead.</i>	
— uxorem, <i>to marry (applied to a man).</i>	F.
dulcis-e, <i>adj.</i> , <i>sweet.</i>	facere, feci, factum, <i>to make, do, compose.</i>
dupicare, <i>to double.</i>	facies-ei, <i>f. a face.</i>
dux, ducis, <i>m. a leader, general.</i>	facile, <i>adv.</i> , <i>easily.</i>
	facilis, <i>adj.</i> , <i>easy.</i>
	factus-a-um, <i>pt. (from facio), done, made.</i>
e } prep., <i>from, out of (with abl.).</i>	facultas-atis, <i>f. opportunity, power.</i>
ex } prep., <i>from, out of (with abl.).</i>	fatēri, <i>to confess.</i>
ebrietas-atis, <i>f. drunkenness.</i>	fera-æ, <i>f. a wild-beast.</i>
edere, edi (irr.), <i>to eat.</i>	fero-tuli-latnum, <i>irr., to bear, carry.</i>
ego, <i>pron.</i> , <i>I (gen. mei, dat. mili; acc. me; abl. me).</i>	feror, ferri, <i>to be borne.</i>
Egyptus-i, <i>Egypt.</i>	ferox-ōcis, <i>adj.</i> , <i>warlike, bold.</i>
elige-re-egi-ectum, <i>to choose.</i>	ferrum-i, <i>iron.</i>
emere, emi, emtum, and emptum, <i>to buy.</i>	festinare, <i>to hasten.</i>
epistola-æ, <i>f. a letter.</i>	fides-ei, <i>f. faith.</i>
eques-itiis, <i>m. a knight, a horseman.</i>	fieri, factus (fio), <i>irr., to be made, done.</i>
equus-i, <i>m. a horse.</i>	filia-æ, <i>f. a daughter.</i>
erat (part of sum), <i>was.</i>	filius-i, <i>m. a son.</i>
error-oris, <i>m. error.</i>	finis-is, <i>m. an end, limit.</i>
est (part of sum), <i>is.</i>	fletus-ūs, <i>m. weeping.</i>
est sui juris, <i>he is his own master.</i>	fœdus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>disgraceful.</i>
et, <i>conj.</i> , and (34).	fœmina-æ, <i>f. a woman.</i>
et — et, <i>both — and.</i>	frater-tris, <i>m. a brother.</i>

frigidus-a-um, *adj.*, *cold*.
 frui, fructus & fruitus, *to enjoy*.
 frumentum-i, *corn*.
 fugēre, fugi-*itum*, *to fly, avoid*.
 fuit (perf. of sum), *was, has been*.
 fulgēre, fulsi, *to shine*.
 fundamentum-i, *foundation*.
 fundēre, fudi, fasum, *to pour*.
 fungi, functus, *to discharge*.

G.

genius-i, *m. a genius*.
 genus-neris, *n. a race, family*.
 gerēre, gessi-stum, *to carry on*.
 glacies-el, *f. ice*.
 gladius-i, *m. a sword*.
 gloria-æ, *f. glory*.
 Græcia-æ, *f. Greece*.
 gravis-e, *adj.*, *grievous, heavy*.
 gubernare, *to govern*.

H.

habēre-*ui*-*itum*, *to have*.
 herba-æ, *f. a herb*.
 herus-i, *m. a master (of slaves)*.
 hic, hoc, hoc, *pron.*, *this, the former*.
 hodie, *adv.*, *to-day*.
 homo-m̄nis, *a man or woman, mankind in general*.
 honestas-ūtis, *f. honesty*.
 honor-ōris, *m. honour*.
 hora-æ, *f. an hour*.
 hostis-is, *m. an enemy*.
 humanitas-ūtis, *f. classical learning*.
 humanus-a-um, *adj.*, *human, polite, learned*.
 hyems-is, *f. winter*.

I.

idem, eadem, Idem, *pr.*, *the same (132)*.
 idem — qui, *the same — as*.
 idem — idem, *as well — as*.
 id seculatis, *at that age (184)*.
 id temporis, *at that time (184)*.

idoneus-a-um, *adj.*, *fit*.
 ignarus-a-um, *adj.*, *ignorant*.
 ignavus-a-um, *adj.*, *idle*.
 ignis-is, *m. fire*.
 ignorantia-æ, *f. ignorance*.
 ille, illa, illud, *pr.*, *he, she, it, the latter (as opposed to hic)*.
 immortalis-e, *adj.*, *immortal*.
 impedimenta-orum, *pl. baggage*.
 imperare, *to command (dat.)*.
 imperator-ōris, *m. a commander, ruler*.
 imperium-i, *command*.
 imperire-*ivi*, *to impart, show*.
 impetrare, *to effect, bring to pass*.
 implēre-*evi*-*etum*, *to fill*.
 improbus-a-um, *adj.*, *wicked*.
 impōnēre-*osui*-*itum*, *to put, impose*.
 imus-a-um, *adj.*, *lowest, bottom of*.
 in, *prep.*, *in (denoting motion, with acc.; denoting rest, with abl.)*.
 industria-æ, *f. industry*.
 ineptia-æ, *f. folly, absurdity*.
 ingenium-i, *talent, skill*.
 innocens-nis, *adj.*, *innocent*.
 insania-æ, *f. madness*.
 insipiens-nis, *adj.*, *foolish*.
 intelligēre-lexi-*ctum*, *to understand*.
 inter, *prep.*, *between, during (with acc.)*.
 interesse (intersum), *to be of importance*.
 interest, *imp.*, *it concerns, is of importance, is important*.
 interficēre-seci-*ctum*, *to kill*.
 interior-ōris, *adj.*, *more inward, interior of*.
 intimus-a-um, *adj.*, *most inward, inside of*.
 inveteratus-a-um, *adj.*, *old, lasted a long time*.
 invidia-æ, *f. envy*.
 invitare, *to invite*.
 ire, iui, *itum, to go*.
 is, ea, id, *pr.*, *he, she, it*.
 iste-ta-tud, *pr.*, *that*.
 ita, *conj.*, *so*.
 Italia-æ, *f. Italy*.
 iter, itinēris, *n. a journey*.

J.

jam, conj., now, at this time.
 jocus-ī, *rn.* a *joke, jesting.*
 jūbēre, *jūsi-summ*, to *order.*
 jucundus-a-um, *adj.*, *pleasant.*
 judex-īcī, *rn.* a *judge.*
 judicare, to *judge.*
 Jupiter, Jovīc, *rn.* *Jupiter, the chief of the gods.*
 jurare, to *swear.*
 justitia-æ, *f.* *justice.*
 juvenis-īs, *rn.* *youth, young man.*
 juventus-ūtis, *f.* *youth.*

L.

labor-ōris, *rn.* *labour, task.*
 lac, lactis, *n.* *milk.*
 lacescere-ītūtum, to *protect, excite.*
 lachryma-æ, *f.* *a tear.*
 lapis-īdī, *rn.* *a stone.*
 Latinus-a-um, *adj.*, *Latin.*
 laudare, to *praise.*
 laus, laudi, *f.* *praise.*
 legatus-i, *rn.* *an ambassador.*
 legere-epi-ctūtum, to *read.*
 lenire-ītī, and -ītūtum, to *mitigate, soften.*
 lenis-e, *adj.*, *gentle.*
 levare, to *lighten.*
 lex, legis, *a law.*
 liber-ūtī, *rn.* *a book.*
 liberare, to *set free.*
 liberi-ūrum, *pl. rn.* *children.*
 libertas-ūtis, *f.* *liberty.*
 libet, *imp.*, *it pleases.*
 libra-æ, *f.* *a pound.*
 licet, *imp.*, *it is lawful, it is permitted.*
 liquef, *imp.*, *it is clear.*
 literæ-ārum, *pl.* *a letter, epistle; the sciences, knowledge.*
 luctus-ūs, *m.* *grief.*
 ludus-i, *m.* *a game.*
 lux, lucis, *f.* *light.*

M.

maculare, to *stain.*
 magis, *adv.*, *more.*

magis — quam, *more — than, rather — than.*
 magister-īl, *m.* *a master (who teaches).*
 magistratus-ūs, *m.* *a magistrate.*
 magni, *at much, at a great price.*
 magnus-a-um, *adj.* *great, large.*
 major-ōris (comp. of magnus), *greater.*
 male, *adv.*, *badly.*
 malo-ūl, malle, irr, to be more willing, to have rather.
 malus-a-um, *bad, evil.*
 manēre-nst-sum, to *remain, to stay.*
 manus-ūs, *f.* *a hand.*
 mare-is, *n.* *the sea.*
 mater-īris, *f.* *a mother.*
 materies-īl, *f.* *material.*
 maximi, *at very much.*
 maximus-a-um, *adj.*, *greatest, oldest.*
 medius-a-um, *adj.*, *middle, middle of.*
 mel, mellis, *n.* *honey.*
 melior-ōris, *adj.* (comp. of bonus), *better.*
 memini-īsso (defective verb), to *remember.*
 memor-īs, *adj.*, *mindful.*
 mens-ntis, *f.* *mind (intellect).*
 mensis-is, *m.* *a month.*
 merum-īl, *wine.*
 metus-ūs, *m.* *fear.*
 meus-a-um, *pr.*, *my, mine.*
 miles-ītis, *m.* *a soldier.*
 minimi, *at the least price, very little.*
 minimus-a-um, *adj.* (sup. of parvus), *the least.*
 minor-ōris, *adj.* (comp. of parvus), *less.*
 minoris, *at less.*
 mirus-a-um, *adj.*, *wonderful.*
 miser-ēra-ērum, *adj.*, *miserable.*
 miserēl, miseritus, & miseritus, to *pity.*
 miserescit }
 miseret } *imp.*, *it pities.*
 miseretur }
 mittēre, misl, missum, to *send.*
 mœstia-æ, *f.* *sadness, grief.*

monēre-*ui*-*itum*, *to advise*.
 mons-*ntis*, *a mountain*.
 monstrare, *to show*.
 mora-*re*, *f.* *delay*.
 mors-*rtis*, *f.* *death*.
 movēre, movi, motum, *to move*.
 multus-*a*-*um*, *adj.*, *much*, *many*.
 mundus-*i*, *m.* *the world*.
 munus-*ēris*, *n.* *a gift, duty, office*.
 musa-*m*, *f.* *a song*.

N.

natio-*ōnis*, *f.* *a nation*.
 natus-*a*-*um*, *pt.*, *born, old* (time following, in *acc.* 217).
 navigare, *to sail*.
 navis-*is*, *m.* *a ship*.
 ne, *conj.*, *not* (with *imperatives* and *subjunctives*), *lest*.
 nec—nec, *neither—nor*.
 negare, *to deny*.
 negligens-*ntis*, *adj.*, *negligent*.
 nemo-*Inis*, *no one*.
 Neptunus-*i*, *Neptune, god of the sea*.
 neque, *conj.*, *neither*.
 neque—neque, *neither—nor*.
 nescire-*lvi*-*ii*-*itum*, *not to know, to be ignorant of*.
 nihil, *indecl.*, *nothing*.
 nihili (gen. of *nihilum*), *at nothing*.
 nimio, *at too much*.
 nimius-*a*-*um*, *adj.*, *too much*.
 niti, nisus, & nixus, *to endeavour*.
 nocēre, nocui, *to hurt* (*dat.*).
 nolo, nolui, nolle, *irr.*, *to be unwilling*.
 non, *adv.*, *not*.
 non modo — sed etiam, *not only—but also*.
 noscēre, novi, *to know* (199).
 noster-*tra*-*trum*, *pr.*, *our, ours*.
 novus-*a*-*um*, *adj.*, *new*.
 nubēre-*psi*-*ptum*, *to marry* (*dat.* applied to a woman).
 nubes-*is*, *m.* *a cloud*.
 nullus-*a*-*um*, *adj.*, *none, no one*.
 numerus-*i*, *m.* *a number*.
 nunc, *conj.*, *now, at this time*.

nuncius-*i*, *m.* *a messenger*.
 nunquam, *adv.*, *never*.
 nutrire-*lvi*-*itum*, *to nourish*.

O.

ob, *prep.*, *for, because of* (with *abl.*).
 oblectare, *to delight*.
 oblivisci, obliktus, *to forget*.
 obstupēre-tupui (fr. *obstupesco*), *to be astonished*.
 omnis-*e*, *adj.*, *all*.
 oppidum-*i*, *n.* *a town*.
 optimus-*a*-*um*, *ad.* (sup. of *bonus*), *best*.
 opus-*ēris*, *n.* *a work*.
 oratio-*ōnis*, *language, speech*.
 ornare, *to adorn*.

P.

pabulum-*i*, *food*.
 parare, *to procure, prepare*.
 parens-*ntis*, *a parent*.
 parēre-*ul*, *to obey* (*dat.*)
 pars-*rtis*, *f.* *a part*.
 parum, *adv.*, *a little* (note 22).
 parvi, *at a little price*.
 parvus-*a*-*um*, *adj.*, *little, small*.
 pater-*tris*, *m.* *a father*.
 patria-*m*, *f.* *a country*.
 pauci-*re*-*a*, *pl. adj.*, *few*.
 paucis his diebus, *a few days ago*.
 paululum, *adj. neut.*, *a little* (note 22).
 pauper-*eris*, *adj.*, *poor*.
 pax, pacis, *f.* *peace*.
 peccare, *to sin*.
 peccatum-*i*, *a crime, sin*.
 pecunia-*m*, *f.* *money*.
 percontator-*ōris*, *m.* *an inquisitor* *person*.
 perfette-tulli-latum, *irr.*, *to endure*.
 perfirui-fructus, *to enjoy thoroughly*.
 periculum-*i*, *danger*.
 permagni, *at very much*.
 permulti-*re*-*a*, *adj. pl.*, *very many*.
 perseverare, *to persevere*.

rector-ōris, <i>m. a ruler.</i>	septem, <i>indecl., seven.</i>	
redire-īvi-ūtum, <i>to return.</i>	serēre, <i>sevi, satur, to sow.</i>	
refert, <i>imp., it concerns, is impor-</i>	servus-ī, <i>m. a slave.</i>	
<i>tant, is of importance.</i>	severitas-ātis, <i>f. severity.</i>	
regina, <i>w., f. the queen.</i>	si, <i>conj., if, so.</i>	
regnum, <i>ī, a kingdom.</i>	sic, <i>conj., so.</i>	
reliquus, <i>n., um, adr., remaining.</i>	sine, <i>prep., without (with abl.).</i>	
<i>rest of.</i>	societas-ātis, <i>f. society.</i>	
res, rel, <i>f. a matter, affair, thing.</i>	Socrates-īs, <i>m. Socrates.</i>	
— adverse, <i>pl., adversity.</i>	sol, solis, <i>m. the sun.</i>	
— secundū, <i>pl., prosperity.</i>	solēre, solitus, <i>to be accustomed.</i>	
respublica-īc, <i>f. the republic, state,</i>	spectare, <i>to behold, see.</i>	
<i>commonwealth (227).</i>	sperare, <i>to hope.</i>	
respondēre-ndi-nsum, <i>to answer.</i>	spernēre, sprevi, spretum, <i>to de-</i>	
revocare, <i>to recall.</i>	<i>spise.</i>	
rex, regis, <i>m. a king.</i>	spes, spci, <i>f. hope.</i>	
ridiculus-a-um, <i>ridiculous.</i>	stare, steti, statum, <i>to stand, cost.</i>	
rixari, <i>to scold, quarrel.</i>	statucre-ni-ūtum, <i>to appoint, deter-</i>	
rogare, <i>to ask for, beg.</i>	<i>mine.</i>	
Roma-īc, <i>f. Rome.</i>	studiosus-a-um, <i>studious, very fond.</i>	
Romanus-a-um, <i>adj., Roman.</i>	studium-ī, <i>n. study.</i>	
Romulus-ī, <i>m. Romulus.</i>	stultitia-īc, <i>f. folly.</i>	
rumpēre-rupi-ūtum, <i>to break.</i>	subvenire-veni-ūtum, <i>to help (dat.).</i>	
rus, ruris, <i>n. the country.</i>	sui, <i>pr. of himself, herself, them-</i>	
S.		
scēpe, <i>adv., often.</i>	<i>selves, &c. (referring to the nom.</i>	
salvus-a-um, <i>adj. safe.</i>	<i>of the verb.)</i>	
salutare, <i>to salute.</i>	sum, ful, esse, <i>to be, am (67).</i>	
Samnis-nitis, <i>a Samnite.</i>	summus-a-um, <i>adj., highest, top</i>	
sanguis-īnis, <i>m. blood.</i>	<i>of.</i>	
sapiens-nitis, <i>adj., wise.</i>	superare, <i>to overcome.</i>	
sapientia-īc, <i>f. wisdom.</i>	superbe, <i>adv., proudly.</i>	
satis, <i>adv., enough.</i>	suscipēre-cepi-ūtum, <i>to undertake.</i>	
scientia-īc, <i>f. knowledge, science.</i>	suspicio-ōnis, <i>f. suspicion.</i>	
scire, scivi, or li-ūtum, <i>to know</i>	sustinēre-ūtum, <i>to sustain, sup-</i>	
<i>(109).</i>	<i>port.</i>	
Scipio-ōnis, <i>m. Scipio.</i>	suus-a-um, <i>his, hers, its (when re-</i>	
scribēre-psī-ūtum, <i>to write.</i>	<i>ferring to the nom. of the verb,</i>	
se, <i>him, her, them (acc. or abl. of</i>	<i>82).</i>	
<i>sui).</i>	sylva-īc, <i>f. a wood.</i>	
sed, <i>conj., but (82. 109).</i>	Syracusa-īc, <i>f. Syracuse.</i>	
semper, <i>adv., always.</i>	T.	
senator-ōris, <i>m. a senator.</i>	tedet, <i>imp., it wearies.</i>	
senectus-ūtis, <i>f. old age.</i>	talentum-ī, <i>a talent.</i>	
sententia-īc, <i>f. an opinion.</i>	talis — qualis, <i>such — as.</i>	
sentire, sensi-nsum, <i>to know, feel,</i>	tam — quam, <i>as well as — as; the</i>	
<i>perceive.</i>	<i>— the.</i>	
sepelire-īvi-ūtum, <i>to bury.</i>	tantū, <i>at so much.</i>	
	tantū — quantū, <i>so much — as.</i>	

tantus-a-um, <i>adv.</i> , <i>so much.</i>	
tantus — quantus, <i>so great — as.</i>	
tarditas-ātis, <i>f.</i> <i>slowness.</i>	
taurus-ī, <i>m.</i> <i>a bull.</i>	
templum-i, <i>a temple.</i>	
tempus-ōris, <i>n.</i> <i>time.</i>	
terra-æ, <i>f.</i> <i>the earth.</i>	
tertius-a-um, <i>the third.</i>	
thymus-i, <i>thyme.</i>	
tot — quot, <i>so many — as.</i>	
totus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>the whole.</i>	
trahere-xi-ctum, <i>to draw.</i>	
transferre-tuli-latum, <i>irr.</i> , <i>to trans-</i>	
<i>fer.</i>	
tres, tria, <i>three.</i>	
tribuere-ui-utum, <i>to attribute.</i>	
Troja-æ, <i>f.</i> <i>city of Troy.</i>	
tu, <i>pr.</i> , <i>thou or you</i> (131).	
tum — tum, <i>as well — as; at one</i>	
<i>time — another; now — now.</i>	
turpis-e, <i>adj.</i> , <i>base, disgraceful.</i>	
turris-is, <i>m.</i> <i>a tower.</i>	
tuus-a-um, <i>thy, thine.</i>	

U.

ultimus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>the last, end</i>	
<i>of.</i>	
universus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>whole of, en-</i>	
<i>tire.</i>	
unus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>one</i> (167).	
urbs, urbis, <i>f.</i> <i>a city.</i>	
usus-ūs, <i>m.</i> <i>use.</i>	
ut, <i>conj.</i> , <i>that</i> (with <i>subj.</i>).	
uti, <i>conj.</i> , <i>that.</i>	
uti, usus, <i>to use</i> (with <i>abl.</i>).	
utilis-e, <i>adj.</i> , <i>useful.</i>	
uxor-ōris, <i>f.</i> <i>a wife.</i>	

V.

valere-ui-utum, <i>to be well, prevail.</i>	
validus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>strong.</i>	
vehementer, <i>adv.</i> , <i>strongly.</i>	
vehere, vexi-ctum, <i>to carry.</i>	
velocitas-ātis, <i>f.</i> <i>swiftness.</i>	
velox-ōcis, <i>adj.</i> , <i>swift.</i>	
venire, veni-ntum, <i>to come.</i>	
veritas-ātis, <i>f.</i> <i>truth.</i>	
verus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>true.</i>	
vesci, <i>to live upon, feed.</i>	
vesper-eris, <i>the evening.</i>	
vestis-is, <i>m.</i> <i>a garment.</i>	
vetare, <i>to forbid.</i>	
vicinus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>neighbouring.</i>	
vicissitudo-inis, <i>f.</i> <i>change.</i>	
victoria-æ, <i>f.</i> <i>victory.</i>	
videre, vidi, visum, <i>to see.</i>	
videri, visus, <i>to seem, be seen.</i>	
vigere-ui, <i>to flourish.</i>	
viginti, <i>indecl.</i> , <i>twenty.</i>	
vincere, vici, victum, <i>to conquer.</i>	
vinculum-i, <i>a bond.</i>	
vinum-i, <i>wine.</i>	
vir, viri, <i>m.</i> <i>a man.</i>	
virtus-ūtis, <i>f.</i> <i>virtue.</i>	
vis, <i>sing.</i> , <i>force, violence</i> (<i>pl.</i> <i>vires, strength</i>).	
vita-æ, <i>f.</i> <i>life.</i>	
vitare, <i>to avoid.</i>	
vivere, vixi-ctum, <i>to live.</i>	
volo-ui, velle, <i>irr.</i> , <i>to be willing.</i>	
voluptas-ātis, <i>f.</i> <i>pleasure.</i>	
vos, <i>pr. pl.</i> , <i>ye, or you</i> (131).	
vulnerare, <i>to wound.</i>	
vulnus-ēris, <i>n.</i> <i>a wound.</i>	

INDEX II.

ENGLISH.

A.

Able (to be), *posse*, irr. verb (267).
 act (to) *agere*, *egi*, *actum*.
 adjectives, declension of, 36.
 admire (to), *admirare*.
 adversity, *res aduersæ* (both declined).
 advise, *monere*-*ut*-*itum*.
 affair, *res*, *rei*.
 afresh, *de integrō*.
 Africa, *Africa*-*a*.
 after } *postea*.
 - afterwards } *postea*.
 age, *ætas*-*atis*, f.
 all, *omnis*-*e*.
 also, *conj.*, *etiam*.
 always, *adv.*, *semper*.
 allowed fact (it is an), *constat*.
 am, *sum* (from *esse*).
 — ashamed, *imp. pudet*.
 — become } *fieri* (from *fio*).
 — made } *fieri* (from *fio*).
 — weary, *tardet*.
 ambassador, *legatus*-*i*.
 amiable, *amabilis*-*e*.
 and, *conj.*, *et*, *que*, *ac*, *atque* (34).
 Anthony, *Antonius*-*i*.
 another, *alter*-*cra*-*um*.
 any one, *aliquis*-*qua*-*quid*, or -*quod*.
 appear, *apparere*-*ui*.
 arms, *arma*-*ōrum*.
 army, *exercitus*-*ōs*.
 as, *ut*.

as little as possible, *quam minimi*.
 as many — as, *tot* — *quot*.
 as many as possible, *quam plurimi*.
 as much as possible, *quam maximi*.
 as well — as, *idem* — *idem*, *tam* — *quam*, *tum* — *tum*.
 Asia, *Asia*-*a*.
 ask for, *rogare*.
 assistance, *auxilium*-*i*.
 at, *prep.*, *ad*, *apud* (with *acc.*)
 — a farthing, *teruncii*.
 — great price, *magni*.
 — hair, *pili*.
 — least, *minimi*.
 — less, *minoris*.
 — a little, *parci*.
 — lock of wool, *facci*.
 — more, *plurit*.
 — most, *plurimi*.
 — much, *magni*.
 — nothing, *nihilii*.
 — no weight, *non pensi*.
 — a nutshell, *nauclii*.
 — penny, *assis*.
 — very much, *permagni*.
 at one time — at another, *tum* — *tum*.
 at that age, *id ætatis*.
 — time, *id temporis*.
 Athens, *Athenæ*-*ūrum*.
 attribute, *tribuere*-*ui*-*utum*.
 authority, *auctoritas*-*atis*, f.
 avoid, *vitare*.

B.

bad, *malus-a-um*.
 baggage, *impedimenta-orum*, n.
 base, *turpis-e*.
 be (to), *sum, fui, esse*.
 bear, *fero, tuli, latum; portare*.
 beautiful, *pulcher-chra-chrum*.
 becomes (it), *debet, convenit, imp.*
 becomes not (it), *dedecet, imp.*
 before, *prep., ante, præ, pro*.
 before — that, *prius — quam*.
 beginning, *exordium-i; initium-i*.
 behold, *aspicere-pexi-ctum; spectare*.
 best, *optimus-a-um* (sup. of *bonus*).
 better, *melior-oris* (comp. of *bonus*).
 blood, *sanguis-inis*, m.
 body, *corpus-ōris*, n.
 bold, *ferox-ōcis*.
 boldness, *audacia-æ*.
 book, *liber-bri*, m.
 born, *natus-a-um*.
 boy, *puer-i*, m.
 break, *rumpere, rupi-ptum*.
 brief, *brevis-e*.
 bring, *fero, tuli, latum; vehere*,
 vexi-ctum; conflare.
 bring to pass, *impetrare*.
 Briton, *Britannus-i*.
 build, *aedificare*.
 bull, *taurus-i*.
 bury, *sepelire-ivi-ultum*.
 business, *negotium-i*.
 — of (omitted after *est*).
 but, *conj., sed, autem* (169).
 buy, *emere, emi, emtum & emptum*.
 by, *prep., a, ab, abs* (with *abl.*).
 by sight, *de facie*.

C.

Cæsar, *Cæsar-āris*.
 Caius, *Caius-i*.
 can, *possum* (27).
 care, *cura-æ*.
 carry on, *gerere, gessi, gestum*.
 Carthage, *Carthago-ōnis*.
 cause, *causa-æ*.
 cement, *conglutinatio-onis*, f.

chain, *catena-æ*.
 change, *vicissitudo-īnis*.
 chariot, *currus-ds*.
 children, *liberi-ōrum*, m.
 choose, *eligi-legi-lectum*.
 Christ, *Christus-i*.
 Christian, *Christianus-a-um*.
 Cicero, *Cicero-ōnis*.
 circus, *circus-i*, m.
 citizen, *civis-is*, m.
 city, *urbs, urbis*, f.
 clear (it is), *liquet, imp.*
 Cleopatra, *Cleopatra-æ*.
 cloud, *nubes-is*, f.
 come, *venire, veni, ventum*.
 command, *imperium-i*.
 — (to) *imperare* (dat.).
 compose, *facere, feci, factum*.
 condition, *conditio-ōnis*.
 confess, *fateri*.
 conscience, *conscientia-æ*.
 consul, *consul-is*.
 contest, *dimicatio-ōnis*, f.
 convenient, *commodus-a-um*.
 Corinth, *Corinthus-i*.
 corn, *frumentum-i*.
 cost, *stare, steti, statum* (dat.).
 could, *possum* (271).
 counsel, *consilium-i*.
 country, *patria-æ*.
 — *rus, ruris* (opposed to
 town).
 courage, *animus-i*.
 crucified, *crucifixus-a-um*.
 cruelly, *adv., crudeliter*.
 crown, *corona-æ*.
 cup, *poculum-i*.
 Curio, *Curio-ōnis*.

D.

daughter, *filia-æ*.
 day, *dies-ei*, m. and f.
 death, *mors-rtis*, f.
 decemvirs, *decemviri-ōrum*, pl.
 defend, *defendere-ndi-nsum*.
 delay, *cunctatio-ōnis*, f.; *mora-æ*, f.
 delight, *oblectare, delectare*.
 delightful (to the eye), *amaenus-a-um*.

delightful (to the mind), <i>jucundus-a-um</i> . delights (it), <i>delectat</i> , imp. deny, <i>negare</i> . describe, <i>describere-psi-ptum</i> . despise, <i>spernere</i> , <i>sprevi</i> , <i>spretum</i> . determine, <i>statuere-ui-utum</i> . difference does it make (what), <i>re-fert</i> , imp. difficult, <i>difficilis-e</i> . difficulty, <i>difficulitas-atis</i> , f. diligence, <i>diligentia-a</i> . direct, <i>praescribere-psi-ptum</i> . discharge, <i>fungi</i> , <i>functus</i> . discourse, <i>sermo-ōnis</i> . disgraceful, <i>turpis-e</i> . dismiss, <i>dimittere-misi-ssum</i> . divide, <i>describere-psi-ptum</i> . do, <i>agere</i> , <i>egi</i> , <i>actum</i> . — <i>facere</i> , <i>feci</i> , <i>factum</i> (particularly after <i>possum</i>). dog, <i>canis-is</i> . double, <i>duplicare</i> . draw, <i>trahere-ai-ctum</i> . drive-out, <i>expellere-uls-i-ulsu</i> m. during, <i>prep.</i> , <i>inter</i> (<i>acc.</i>). duty, <i>munus-ēris</i> , n. duty of (omitted after <i>est</i>).	excuse, <i>excusare</i> . expedient (it is), <i>imp.</i> , <i>expedit</i> . expel, <i>expellere-uls-i-ulsu</i> m. extend, <i>preferre-tuli-latum</i> .
E.	F.
earth, <i>terra-a</i> . ease, <i>otium-i</i> . easily, <i>facile</i> , adv. eat, <i>edere</i> , <i>edi</i> . Egypt, <i>Egyptus-i</i> . empire, <i>imperium-i</i> . end of, <i>extremus-a-um</i> (in agreement). endeavour, <i>niti</i> , <i>nitus</i> & <i>nixus</i> . enemy, <i>hostis-is</i> , m. enjoy, <i>frui</i> , <i>fruitus</i> & <i>fructus</i> . error, <i>error-ōris</i> , m. esteem, <i>estimare</i> . Europe, <i>Europa-a</i> . evening, <i>vesper-ēris</i> . evident (it is), <i>imp.</i> , <i>liquet</i> . excellent, <i>adj.</i> , <i>præstans-ntis</i> . excellently, <i>adv.</i> , <i>excellentissime</i> . excepted, <i>exceptus-a-um</i> .	fail, <i>deesse</i> (<i>dat.</i>). fair, <i>pulcher-chra-chrum</i> . father, <i>pater-tris</i> , m. fear, <i>metus-ās</i> . few, <i>pauci-ā-a</i> . few days ago, <i>paucis his diebus</i> . fight, <i>dimicare</i> . fill, <i>implere-ēvi-etum</i> . fire, <i>ignis-is</i> , m. fit, <i>idoneus-a-um</i> . fitting (it is), <i>convenit</i> . flee, <i>fugere-gi-gitum</i> . flesh, <i>caro</i> , <i>carnis</i> . fly, <i>fugere-gi-gitum</i> . folly, <i>stultitia-a</i> ; <i>ineptia-a</i> . forasmuch — as, <i>tanti</i> — <i>quanti</i> . forbid, <i>vetare</i> . forces, <i>copiae-ārum</i> , f. forget, <i>oblivisci</i> , <i>oblitus</i> . former, <i>prior</i> , <i>prius</i> . — (opposed to latter), <i>hic, hæc, hoc</i> .
G.	foundation, <i>fundamentum-i</i> . four, <i>indecl.</i> , <i>quatuor</i> . fourteen, <i>indecl.</i> , <i>quatuor decem</i> . free, <i>liberare</i> . friend, <i>amicus-i</i> . friendly, <i>amicus-a-um</i> . from, <i>prep.</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>ab</i> , <i>abs</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>ex</i> (with <i>abl.</i>). game, <i>ludus-i</i> . Gaul, <i>Gallia-a</i> . genitive case, how known (2). — place of (3). genius, <i>genius-i</i> . gift, <i>munus-ēris</i> . give, <i>dare</i> , <i>dedi</i> , <i>datum</i> . — satisfaction, <i>dare pœnas</i> (49). glory, <i>gloria-a</i> , f.

<i>zō, ire, ivi, itum.</i>	idle, <i>ignavus-a-um.</i>
<i>God, Deus-i.</i>	ignorance, <i>ignorantia, a.</i>
<i>gold, aurum-i.</i>	ignorant, <i>ignarus-a-um.</i>
<i>golden, aureus-a-um.</i>	ignorant of, <i>nescire.</i>
<i>good, bonus-a-um.</i>	immortal, <i>immortalis-e.</i>
<i>govern, imperare (dat.), gubernare.</i>	importance to (it is of), <i>imp., interest, refert.</i>
<i>grant, concedere-essi-essum.</i>	improves, <i>alere-ui-itum.</i>
<i>great, magnus-a-um.</i>	in, <i>\in</i> , denoting motion takes acc.
<i>Greece, Græcia-æ.</i>	into, <i>\denoting rest takes abl.</i>
<i>grief, luctus-ās.</i>	in the possession of, <i>potiri-itus.</i>
<i>grieves (it), piget.</i>	infinitive, <i>6.</i> Note 6.
<i>grievous, gravis-e.</i>	innocent, <i>innocens-ntis.</i>
 H.	inside of, <i>intimus-a-um</i> (in agreement).
<i>hand, manus-ās, f.</i>	interest of (it is the), <i>imp., interest, refert.</i>
<i>happen to be, sum, esse.</i>	interior of, <i>interior-ōris</i> (in agreement).
<i>happens (it), imp., accidit, continet, evenit.</i>	invite, <i>invitare.</i>
<i>happy, beatus-a-um.</i>	iron, <i>ferrum-i</i> (adj. <i>ferreus-a-um</i>).
<i>have, habere-ui-itum.</i>	is, <i>est</i> (part of <i>sum</i>).
<i>he, pr., is, ille.</i>	it, <i>id, illud</i> (neuter of <i>is, ille</i>).
<i>he is his own master, est sui juris.</i>	it is, <i>est.</i>
<i>hear, audire-ivi-itum.</i>	Italy, <i>Italia-æ.</i>
<i>heaven, cælum-i.</i>	its (see <i>suus-a-um</i>).
<i>heavy, gravis-e.</i>	 J.
<i>help, subvenire-veni-ntum (dat.).</i>	jesting, <i>jocus-i.</i>
<i>herb, herba-æ.</i>	judge, <i>judex-icis.</i>
<i>his, her, his own, her own,</i> <i>suus-a-um</i> (when it refers to the <i>nom.</i> of the verb; if not) <i>eius</i> (gen. of <i>is</i>).	— <i>judicare.</i>
<i>home, domus-i, and ās, f.</i>	Jupiter, <i>Jupiter, Jovis.</i>
<i>honesty, honestas-ātis, f.</i>	justice, <i>justitia-æ.</i>
<i>honey, mel, mellis, n.</i>	 K.
<i>honour, honor-ōris.</i>	kill, <i>interficere-feci-fectum.</i>
<i>hope, spes, spei.</i>	kindness, <i>beneficium-i.</i>
<i>horse, equus-i.</i>	king, <i>rex, regis.</i>
<i>hour, hora-æ.</i>	kingdom, <i>regnum-i.</i>
<i>house, domus-i and ās, f.</i>	know, <i>scire-ivi.</i>
<i>how much, quantus-a-um.</i>	knowledge, <i>scientia.</i>
<i>— (before comparatives), quanto.</i>	know not, <i>nescire-ivi.</i>
<i>human, humanus-a-um.</i>	 L.
 I.	labour, <i>labor-ōris, m.</i>
<i>ice, glacies-ei, f.</i>	 I

language, <i>oratio-ōnis.</i>	me. <i>pr.</i> , <i>me</i> (acc. or <i>abl.</i> of <i>ego</i> , 131).
large, <i>magnum-a-um.</i>	messenger, <i>nuncius-i.</i>
Latin, <i>Latinus-a-um.</i>	middle, <i>medius-a-um.</i>
latter (opposed to <i>former</i>), <i>ille-a-ud.</i>	milk, <i>lac, lactis</i> , n.
law, <i>lex, legis.</i>	mind, <i>mens-ntis</i> , f. (intellect).
lawful (it is), <i>imp., licet.</i>	— <i>animus-i</i> , m. (sentiments).
lead, <i>ducere, duxi, ductum.</i>	mindful, <i>mentor-ōris.</i>
leader, <i>dux, ducis</i> , m.	mine, <i>mens-a-um.</i>
learn, <i>discere, didicī.</i>	misbecomes (it), <i>imp., dedecet.</i>
leave, <i>excēdere-exsi-ssum.</i>	miserable, <i>misera-era-erum.</i>
less, <i>minor-ōris</i> (comp. of <i>parens</i>).	mitigate, <i>lē: irē-ī i, and ii-ītum.</i>
lest, <i>ne, conj. (subj.).</i>	my, <i>meus-a-um.</i>
letter, <i>epistola-a, litera-a.</i>	money, <i>pecunia-a.</i>
letters (literature), <i>literæ-arum, pl.</i>	— (coined), <i>nummus-i.</i>
liberty, <i>libertas-atis.</i>	monthly, <i>mensis-is</i> , m.
life, <i>vita-a.</i>	mood, p. 6 (note 6).
light, <i>lux-ucis.</i>	more, adj., <i>plus, pluris.</i>
lighten, <i>lēcare.</i>	— of more, <i>pluris.</i>
little, <i>parcus-a-um.</i>	— adv., <i>magis.</i>
— <i>a, paululum, parum</i> (with gen.).	— (sign of comparative degree),
live, <i>vivere-ciri-ctum.</i>	more — than, <i>magis — quam.</i>
live upon, <i>veisci.</i>	— willing, <i>malō, malūl, malle.</i>
long, <i>longus-a-um.</i>	most, <i>plurimus-a-um</i> (sup. of <i>multus</i>).
lord, <i>dominus-i.</i>	mother, <i>mater-tris.</i>
lose, <i>amittere-isi-ssum.</i>	mountain, <i>mons-ntis.</i>
love, <i>amare.</i>	move, <i>motere, moē, motum.</i>
M.	
magistrate, <i>magistratus-ōs.</i>	much, adv., <i>multus-a-um.</i>
make, <i>facere, feci, factum.</i>	— (before comparatives), <i>multo.</i>
make atonement, <i>dare pacas</i> (49).	
makes no difference (it), <i>imp., nihil refert.</i>	
man, <i>homo-īnis</i> (mankind), <i>cir-īris.</i>	
manifest (it is), <i>liquet.</i>	
many, <i>multus-a-um.</i>	
mark of (omitted after <i>est</i>).	
marry (of a man), <i>ducere uxorem.</i>	
— (of a woman), <i>nubere-psipium</i> (dat.).	
master (of property), <i>dominus-i.</i>	
— (of slaves), <i>herus-i.</i>	
— (who teaches), <i>magister-tri.</i>	
material, <i>materies-ci.</i>	
N.	
nation, <i>natio-ōnis</i> , f.	
nature, <i>natura-a.</i>	
necessaries, <i>commoda-ōrum</i> , n. pl.	
negligence, <i>negligentia-a.</i>	
negligent, <i>negligens-ntis.</i>	
neighbouring, <i>vicinus-a-um.</i>	
neither — nor, <i>neque — neque, nec — ncc.</i>	
never, <i>adv., nunquam.</i>	
new, <i>novus-a-um.</i>	
next, <i>adj., posterus-a-um, proximus-a-um.</i>	
no, <i>nihil</i> (with a gen. 130).	
no one, <i>nemo-īnis.</i>	
—, none, <i>nullus-a-um, nequaque-quid.</i>	

nominative case, 2.	pities (it), <i>imp.</i> , <i>miseret</i> , <i>miserescit</i> ,
nor, <i>neque</i> , <i>nec</i> .	<i>miseretur</i> .
not, <i>adv.</i> , <i>non</i> , <i>ne</i> (with <i>imp.</i> and <i>subj.</i>).	pity, <i>miserēri</i> , <i>miseritus</i> and <i>miser-</i>
not only — but also, <i>non modo</i>	<i>tus</i> .
— <i>sed etiam</i> .	place, <i>collocare</i> .
nothing, <i>nihil</i> , <i>nil</i> (indecl.).	play, <i>ludere</i> , <i>ludi</i> , <i>lusum</i> .
nourish, <i>alere</i> - <i>ui</i> - <i>itum</i> .	pleases (it), <i>imp.</i> , <i>libet</i> .
now, <i>conj.</i> , <i>nunc</i> , <i>jam</i> .	pleasure, <i>voluptas</i> - <i>ātis</i> , f.
now — now, <i>nunc</i> — <i>nunc</i> , <i>tum</i> —	poet, <i>poeta</i> - <i>æ</i> .
<i>tum</i> .	point out, <i>monstrare</i> .
number, <i>numerus</i> - <i>i</i> .	polish, <i>polire</i> - <i>ivi</i> - <i>itum</i> .
O.	
obey, <i>parere</i> - <i>ui</i> - <i>itum</i> (dat.).	poor, <i>pauper</i> - <i>ēris</i> .
odium, <i>invidia</i> - <i>æ</i> .	possess, <i>patiri</i> - <i>itus</i> (gen., acc., or
offend, <i>offendere</i> - <i>ndi</i> - <i>nsum</i> .	<i>abl.</i>).
off-hand, <i>ex tempore</i> .	pound, <i>libra</i> - <i>æ</i> .
office, <i>munus</i> - <i>ēris</i> .	power, <i>potestas</i> - <i>ātis</i> , f.
often, <i>adv.</i> , <i>sæpe</i> .	praise, <i>laus</i> , <i>laudis</i> , f.
old, <i>natus</i> - <i>a</i> - <i>um</i> (time following in	— <i>laudare</i> .
acc. 217).	precept, <i>præcepta</i> - <i>ōrum</i> , pl.
— <i>inveteratus</i> - <i>a</i> - <i>um</i> .	precious, <i>carus</i> - <i>a</i> - <i>um</i> .
— age, <i>senectus</i> - <i>ūtis</i> , f.	prepare, <i>parare</i> .
on purpose, <i>de industria</i> .	prescribe, <i>præscribēre</i> - <i>psi</i> - <i>ptum</i>
one man — another, <i>alius</i> — <i>alius</i> .	(dat.).
opinion, <i>sententia</i> - <i>æ</i> .	present, <i>presens</i> - <i>ntis</i> .
opportunity, <i>facultas</i> - <i>ātis</i> , f.	preserve, <i>conservare</i> .
opposite, <i>ex adverso</i> .	prevail, <i>valere</i> - <i>ui</i> - <i>itum</i> .
order, <i>jubēre</i> , <i>jussi</i> - <i>ssum</i> (acc. and	price, <i>pretium</i> - <i>i</i> .
infin.).	procure, <i>parare</i> .
ought, <i>debēre</i> - <i>ui</i> .	pronouns, 40.
— (it), <i>imp.</i> , <i>debet</i> , <i>oportet</i> .	properly, <i>adv.</i> , <i>recte</i> .
our, <i>noster</i> - <i>tra</i> - <i>trum</i> .	property of (it is the) (omitted
overcome, <i>superare</i> .	after <i>est</i>).
P.	
parent, <i>parent</i> - <i>ntis</i> .	prosperity, <i>res secundæ</i> (both de-
past (things), <i>præterita</i> - <i>ōrum</i> , pl.	clined).
peace, <i>pax</i> - <i>acis</i> , f.	provisions, <i>commeatus</i> - <i>īs</i> .
people, <i>populus</i> - <i>i</i> .	prudence, <i>prudentia</i> - <i>æ</i> .
perceive, <i>cernēre</i> - <i>crevi</i> - <i>cretum</i> .	punish, <i>punire</i> - <i>ivi</i> - <i>itum</i> .
perform, <i>fungi</i> , <i>functus</i> .	
permitted (it is), <i>imp.</i> , <i>licet</i> .	
persevere, <i>perseverare</i> .	
philosophy, <i>philosophia</i> - <i>æ</i> , f.	
pious, <i>pius</i> - <i>a</i> - <i>um</i> .	
Q.	
queen, <i>regina</i> - <i>æ</i> .	
R.	
rather — than, <i>magis</i> — <i>quam</i> , <i>prius</i>	
— <i>quam</i> .	
read, <i>legēre</i> , <i>legi</i> , <i>lectum</i> .	
ready, <i>promptus</i> - <i>a</i> - <i>um</i> .	
recal, <i>revocare</i> .	

receive, <i>accipere-cēpi-ptum.</i>	seem, } <i>vidēri, visus.</i>
reckon at a farthing, <i>facēre teruncū.</i>	seen (be), } <i>vidēti, visus.</i>
— a hair, <i>facēre pili, habēre</i>	senator, <i>senator-ōris.</i>
<i>pili.</i>	send, <i>mittēre, misi-issum.</i>
— a lock of wool, <i>estimare</i>	set free, <i>liberare.</i>
<i>flocci, facēre flocci.</i>	seven (indecl.), <i>septem.</i>
— nothing, <i>ducēre nihil, fa-</i>	severity, <i>severitas-atis, L.</i>
<i>cēre nihil, pendēre nihil.</i>	shames (it), <i>imp., pudet.</i>
— no weight, <i>non ducēre</i>	she, <i>pr., illa, ea</i> (fem. of <i>ille & is</i>).
<i>pensi.</i>	shed, <i>fundēre, fudi, fusum.</i>
— a nutshell, <i>facēre nauci,</i>	ship, <i>naris-is.</i>
<i>habēre nauci.</i>	show, <i>adhibēre-ut-ilūm.</i>
— a penny, <i>estimare assis,</i>	silver, <i>argentum-i: adj., argenteus-</i>
<i>facēre assis.</i>	<i>a-um.</i>
— this, <i>facēre hujus.</i>	slain, <i>pl., casus-a-um.</i>
reign (to), <i>imperare.</i>	slave, <i>seruos-i.</i>
remain, <i>manēre-nsl-nsum.</i>	sleep, <i>dormire-irī-ilūm.</i>
remaining, <i>adj. reliquias-a-um.</i>	so, <i>conj., ita, sic-tam</i> (before ad-
remember, <i>memini, reminisci</i> (gen.).	jjectives).
repents (it), <i>imp., paenitit.</i>	so great, } <i>tantus-a-um</i> — (before
reprove, <i>reprehendēre-di-nsum.</i>	so much, } <i>comparatives</i> <i>tantō.</i>
republic, <i>res-publica, rei-publica.</i>	so great—as, <i>tantus—quantus.</i>
request, <i>petēre-īvi & -ii-ilūm.</i>	so many—as, <i>tot—quot.</i>
rest of, <i>reliquias-a-um</i> (in agree- ment).	Socrates, <i>Socrates-is.</i>
return, <i>redire-īvi & -ii-ilūm.</i>	soldier, <i>miles-īlis.</i>
reward, <i>premium-i.</i>	some, <i>aliquis-qua-quid</i> or <i>-quod.</i>
ridiculous, <i>ridiculus-a-um.</i>	something, <i>aliquid.</i>
Roman, <i>Romanus-a-um.</i>	some time (something of time), <i>aliquid temporis.</i>
Rome, <i>Roma-ē.</i>	son, <i>filius-i.</i>
Romulus, <i>Romulus-i.</i>	song, <i>musa-ē.</i>
ruler, <i>imperator-ōris, rector-ōris.</i>	sooner—than, <i>magis—quam, prius</i> <i>—quam.</i>
S.	
sadness, <i>mæstitia-ē, f.</i>	sow, <i>serere, sevi, salutum.</i>
safe, <i>salvus-a-um.</i>	speak, <i>dicēre, dixi, dictum.</i>
sailor, <i>nauta-ē, m.</i>	stain, <i>maculare.</i>
salute, <i>salutare.</i>	stand, <i>stare, steti, statum.</i>
same, <i>idem, eadem, idem.</i>	standard, <i> vexillum-i.</i>
same—as, <i>idem—qui.</i>	state, <i>res-publica, rei-publica; civi-</i>
Sannite, <i>Sannis-īlis.</i>	<i>tas-atis, L.</i>
say, <i>dicēre, dixi, dictum.</i>	strength, <i>vires, rium</i> (pl. of <i>vis</i>).
science, <i>scientia-ē, f.</i>	strong, <i>validus-a-um.</i>
Scipio, <i>Scipio-ōnis, m.</i>	studious, <i>studiosus-a-um.</i>
scold, <i>rixari.</i>	study, <i>studium-i.</i>
sea, <i>mare-ris, n.</i>	suddenly, <i>ex improviso, de impro-</i>
see, <i>vidēre, vidi, visum; spectare.</i>	<i>viso.</i>
seek, <i>petēre-īvi & -ii-ilūm; que-</i>	suits (it), <i>imp., contenti.</i>
<i>rēre-sitū-sitūm.</i>	sun, <i>sol-īlis.</i>
	support, <i>sustinēre-ut-īlūm.</i>
	suspicion, <i>suspicio-ōnis, f.</i>
	sweet, <i>dulcis-e.</i>

swiftness, *velox-ēcis*.
swiftness, *velocitas-atis*.
sword, *gladius-i*, m.
Syracuse, *Syracusa-ē*.

T.

talent, *ingenium-i*.
— (money), *talentum-i*.
teach, *docēre-ūi-clum*.
tear, *lachryma-ē*, f.
tell, *dicēre*, *dixi*, *dictum*.
temple, *templum-i*.
ten (indecl.), *decem*.
than, *conj*, *quam*.
that, *pr*, *is*, *ille*, *iste*.
— *conj*, *ut* (with subj.).
— (omitted before *acc.* & *inf.*).
the—the (before *comp.* or *sup.*)
— *quanto*—*tanto*, *quo*—*co*, *tam*—*quam*.
there are, *sunt* { *there* is omitted
there is, *est* { before parts of
to be.
think, *putare*.
third, *tertius-a-um*.
thirty (indecl.), *triginta*.
this, *pr*, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*.
three, *tres*, neut. *tria*.
thy, thine, *tus-a-um*.
thyme, *thymus-i*.
time, *tempus-ēris*.
to-day, *adv*, *hodie*.
too (sign of the comparative de-
gree, note 38).
too-much, *adj*, *nimius-a-um* : *adv*,
nimir.
torture, *excruciare*.
tower, *turris-i*.
transfer, *transferre-tuli-latum*.
Troy, *Troja-ē*.
trust, *confidēre-fidi-fisum*.
truth, *veritas-atis*.
twenty (indecl.), *viginti*.
two, *adj*, *duo*, *duæ*, *duo* (note 46).

U.

unawares, *ineanlus-a-um*.
— *de improviso*.
undergo punishment, *dare poenas*
(49).

understand, *intelligēre-lexi-lectum*.
undertake, *suscipere-cēpi-ptum*.
unfriendly, *inimicus-a-um*.
unskilled, *imperitus-a-um* (gen.).
unwilling (to be), *irr.*, *nolo*, *nolui*,
nolle.
unwillingly (*unwilling*, *adj*), *inci-
tus-a-um*.
us, *pr*, *nos* (acc. of *ego*, 131).
use, *usus-ēs*, m.
— (to), *uti*, *usus*.
useful, *utilis-e*.

V.

value, *estimare*.
very, *adv*, *maxime*.
— (a sign of the *sup.* degree,
note 38).
— fond, *studiosus-a-um*.
— little (*sup.*), *minimus-a-um*.
— many (*sup.*), *plurimi-ē-a*,
permagni-ē-a.
— much, *aliquantus-a-um*.
victory, *victoria-ē*.
violence, *vis* (pl., *vires*, strength).
virtue, *virtus-utis*, f.
vocalive case, 3.

W.

walk, *ambulare*.
war, *bellum-i*.
warlike, *ferox-ēcis*.
was, *erat* (part of *sunt*).
water, *aqua-ē*, f.
we, *pr*, *nos* (pl. of *ego*).
wearies (it), *imp*, *fædet*.
weeping, *fletus-ēs*.
well, *adv*, *bene*.
what (*rel. pr.*), *quis*, *que*, *quid* or
quod.
what news? *quid novi?* (what of
news?)
when, *quum* or *cum*.
when—then, *cum-lum*, *quum—
tum*.
who (*rel. pr.*), *qui*, *que*, *quod*.
— (interrog.), *quis*, *que*, *quid* or
quod.
whose, *cuius* (gen. of *qui* or *quid*).

wicked, <i>adj.</i> , <i>improbus-a-um</i> .	wound, <i>vulnus-ēris</i> , <i>n.</i>
wild-beast, <i>fera-æ</i> .	write, <i>scribēre-psi-ptum</i> .
will, be willing, <i>irr.</i> , <i>volo</i> , <i>volui</i> , <i>velle</i> .	
wine, <i>vinum-i</i> , <i>merum-i</i> .	
winter, <i>hyems-mls</i> .	
wisdom, <i>sapientia-æ</i> .	
wise, <i>sapiens-ntis</i> .	
with, <i>prep.</i> , <i>cum</i> (with <i>abl.</i>).	yield, yield up, <i>cedēre-essi-essum</i> .
without, <i>prep.</i> , <i>sine</i> (with <i>abl.</i>)	you, <i>pr.</i> , <i>tu</i> , <i>pl.</i> <i>vos</i> (131).
wood, <i>sylva-æ</i> .	young, <i>juvenis-e</i> ; <i>adolescens-ntis</i> .
work, <i>opus-ēris</i> .	your, your own, <i>sing.</i> <i>tuus-a-um</i> , <i>pl.</i> <i>vester-tra-trum</i> .
world, <i>mundus-i</i> .	
worst, <i>peccimus-a-um</i> (sup. of <i>ma-</i> <i>lus</i>).	youth, <i>adolescentia-æ</i> , <i>juvenis</i> <i>-ntis</i> .

X.

year, <i>annus-i</i> , <i>m.</i>
yearly, <i>quotannis</i> .
yield, yield up, <i>cedēre-essi-essum</i> .
you, <i>pr.</i> , <i>tu</i> , <i>pl.</i> <i>vos</i> (131).
young, <i>juvenis-e</i> ; <i>adolescens-ntis</i> .
your, your own, <i>sing.</i> <i>tuus-a-um</i> , <i>pl.</i> <i>vester-tra-trum</i> .
youth, <i>adolescentia-æ</i> , <i>juvenis</i> <i>-ntis</i> .

ERRATA.

* * * In the hurry of the press, these errors have inadvertently crept in, which the student is requested to correct.

Page 39, line 31, <i>for exercitus</i> , G. -i	<i>read exercitus</i> , G. -iūs.
— 40, — 6, — <i>dependere</i> , to depend,	— <i>defendere</i> , to defend.
— 56, — 12, — <i>puerum</i> ,	— <i>puero</i> .
— 65, last line, — <i>pauper-era-erum</i> ,	— <i>panper-eris</i> .
— 69, line 14, — <i>dixisse</i> ,	— <i>duxisse</i> .
— 87, — 20, — <i>ignarus</i> ,	— <i>ignavus</i> .

